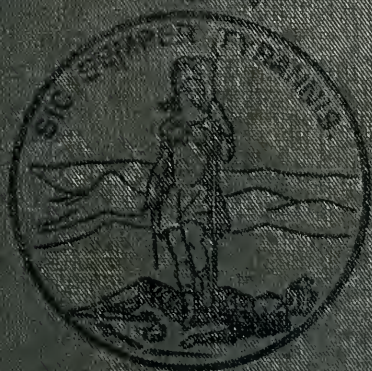
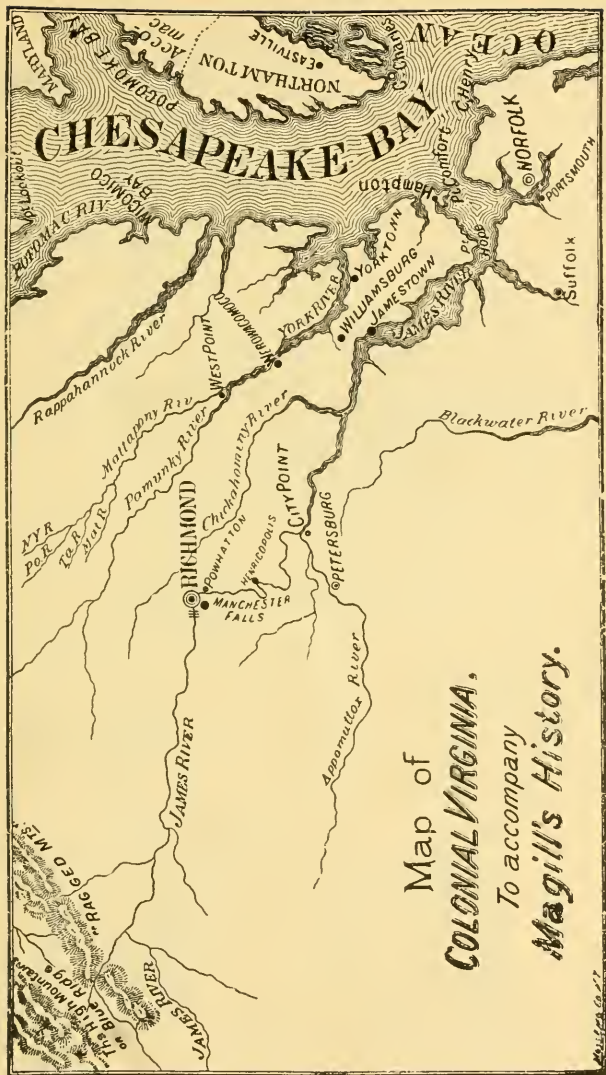


NEW REVISED EDITION

History of Virginia

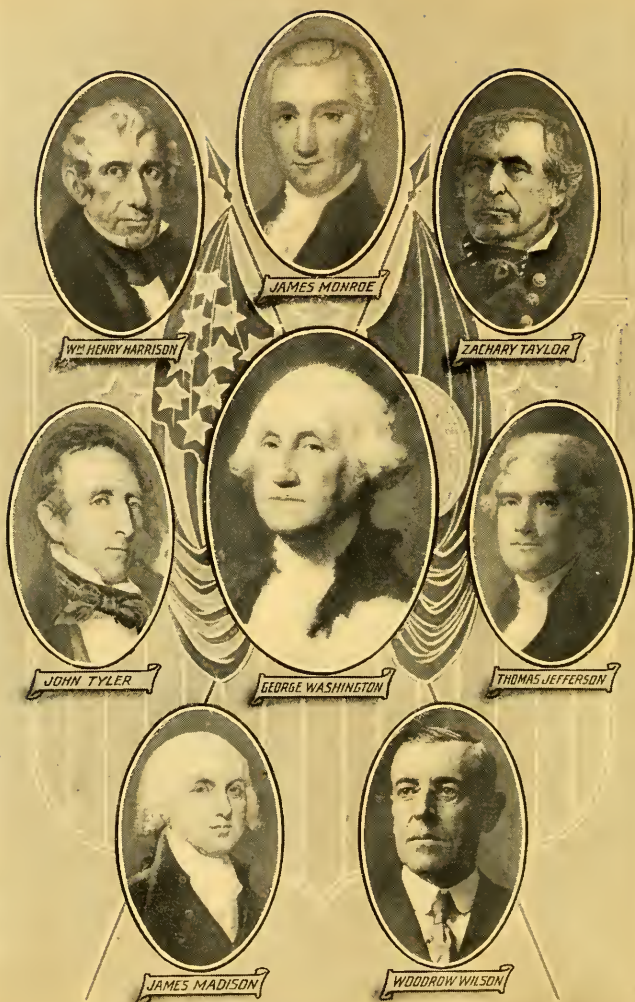


Mary Tucker Magill



Map of
COLONIAL VIRGINIA,
 To accompany
Magill's History.

A detailed historical map of Virginia, showing county boundaries, major cities, and geographical features. The map is oriented with North at the top. The title "MAP OF VIRGINIA" is prominently displayed in the upper left corner. The map includes numerous place names, including Washington, Richmond, Norfolk, and various other cities and towns. It also shows the state's borders with Maryland, North Carolina, and West Virginia, as well as the Chesapeake Bay and the Potomac River.



THE EIGHT UNITED STATES PRESIDENTS
WHO WERE BORN IN VIRGINIA

HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS



BY

MARY TUCKER MAGILL

New edition revised by W. S. CURRELL, Professor of English
WASHINGTON AND LEE UNIVERSITY

J. P. BELL COMPANY, INC., PUBLISHERS
LYNCHBURG AND RICHMOND
VIRGINIA

F234
1936

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1881, by

J. P. BELL & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Copyright, 1890, by J. P. BELL.
Copyright, 1904, by J. P. BELL.
Copyright, 1908, by J. P. BELL Co., INC.
Copyright, 1914, by J. P. BELL Co., INC.

MAR 31 1914

51

(EDITION TWELVE)

B. W.

©CL A369513

401

PUBLISHERS' NOTICE

In presenting this new edition, revised by Prof. W. S. Currell, Ph. D., Professor of English, Washington and Lee University, we do so with full confidence and assurance that it will meet with the largely increased patronage which the many improvements made and its intrinsic merits deserve.

Besides supplying an important need in the schools, this, we believe, is the most attractively written history of Virginia now in print.

It is, therefore, with some degree of pride that we submit it to Virginia educators as the only school text-book used in our State compiled by a Virginia author, published by a Virginia publishing house, and which has stood the test of the school-room for forty years.

J. P. BELL COMPANY, INC.

LYNCHBURG, VA., 1914.

AUTHOR'S INTRODUCTION

In the preparation of this volume for the use of schools, I have been actuated by an earnest desire to place before her youth a faithful record of the past history of the old "Mother of States and Statesmen,"—a record so full of honor that her children may well be proud of it. I have attempted no dry details, no political dissertations, but have adopted the familiar style of a "story-teller," drawing from the stores of incident, in which the past of Virginia is so rich, such narrations as would be most apt to stamp upon the youthful mind the graver facts of history, interspersing such explanations as were absolutely necessary with a simplicity and clearness which will, I hope, render them easy of comprehension even to the youngest student of these pages.

In deference to the prejudices and tastes of some teachers, I have affixed questions to the different chapters, though my own experience leads me to the conviction that the best mode of teaching history is not by questions, which make the lesson a task, instead of a recreation established in the midst of dryer and more abstruse studies. Let the class read the lesson and the teacher ask full questions upon it: thus a habit of attentive reading is formed, and the history of a single country does not employ, as is often the case, an entire session.

In preparing the book I have freely made use of the labors of others, to whom only a general acknowledgment can be made.

The volume is earnestly recommended to the young student, with the hope that he may strive to imitate the many worthy examples held up before him in its pages, and that he may remember that the prosperity and honor of his State in the future, as they did in the past, rest upon the shoulders of her sons.

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION OF MAGILL'S HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

In response to a request from the publishers and copyright holders of Magill's History of Virginia I undertook a revision of this popular book, which has so long been an inspiration to the children of the Old Dominion. The present edition preserves all the essential features of the latest revision made by the author, except in the treatment of the Civil War. This part of the book has been rewritten and condensed. As the same subject is studied again in United States History, Miss Magill's account of the war was thought by many teachers to be unnecessarily full.

I have also added an index, a few summaries, a brief bibliography, and a chapter bringing the history of the State down to the present time. In the interest of simplicity a number of minor changes have been made in the diction and in the structure of the sentences. A few misstatements have also been corrected. The publishers have greatly improved the maps and pictures. In the humble rôle of compiler and reviser I have not hesitated to make use of facts furnished by others, to whom I here gratefully acknowledge my indebtedness.

It is hoped that my alterations and additions will in no way impair the usefulness of a book that has the unusual record of more than forty years of service in the schools of Virginia.

W. S. CURRELL.

Washington and Lee University,
Lexington, Virginia, March, 1914.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
CHAPTER I.—1492-1585.	
Early Discoveries and Explorations.....	1
CHAPTER II.—1606-1607.	
Virginia the Mother of States—The London Company sends Captain Smith to America—His Early Life—Landing and Settlement at Jamestown—Wingfield appointed President.....	8
CHAPTER III.—1607 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Colony reduced to Want—Captain Smith commands an Expedition in search of Food—Adventures with the Indians—Manners and Customs of the Indians.....	14
CHAPTER IV.—1607 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Discord in the Colony—Smith's search on the Pacific—He is taken Prisoner, condemned to Death and rescued by Pocahontas	20
CHAPTER V.—1607 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Newport arrives from England—Trading with the Indians—Powhatan	27
CHAPTER VI.—1608.	
Smith's Expedition up the Chesapeake Bay—Quells a Mutiny—New Discoveries and Adventures.....	33
CHAPTER VII.—1608-1609.	
What Newport brought from England—Coronation of Powhatan—Pocahontas again saves Captain Smith.....	38
CHAPTER VIII.—1609 (<i>Continued</i>).	
The Treacherous Dutchmen—Opechbankanough—Smith, by his Wisdom and Bravery, saves his Crew—Arrivals from England—Smith's Accident and Return to England.....	45
CHAPTER IX.—1609-1614.	
Arrival of Sir Thomas Gates—Jamestown abandoned—The Meeting with Lord Delaware—The Return—Capture of Pocahontas, and her Marriage and Death.....	51
CHAPTER X.—1614-1622.	
Death of Powhatan—The Price of a Wife—Indian Massacre—English History as connected with Virginia—Governor Yeardley—Harvey sent to England—Berkeley appointed Governor.....	60

	PAGE
CHAPTER XI.—1644.	
Opechankanough makes War and is taken Prisoner—His Death— War in England—Lord Baltimore settles Maryland—Charles I. beheaded—How Virginia got the Title "Old Dominion".....	69
CHAPTER XII.—1675.	
Indian Troubles—Bacon's Rebellion.....	77
CHAPTER XIII.—1675 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Bacon's Rebellion (<i>Continued</i>).....	86
CHAPTER XIV.—1676.	
The End of Bacon's Rebellion—Lord Culpeper—The Tobacco Rebellion	95
CHAPTER XV.—1684-1723.	
Treaty with the Five Nations—William and Mary College estab- lished—Parson Blair and Governor Spotswood—The Knights of the Horseshoe.....	104
CHAPTER XVI.—1723 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Difficulties between the Colonies—Colonel William Byrd lays the Foundation of Richmond and of Petersburg—Settlements in the Valley of Virginia—Early Customs.....	112
CHAPTER XVII.—1732-1755.	
Birth of George Washington—Incidents of his Early Life—Un- successful Mission to the French—War with the French begun..	119
CHAPTER XVIII.—1755 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Battle of Fort Duquesne—Braddock's Defeat and Death.....	129
CHAPTER XIX.—1756-1763.	
Indian Atrocities—Fall of Fort Duquesne—Washington retires to Mount Vernon.....	138
CHAPTER XX.—1765-1770.	
Patrick Henry—Richard Henry Lee—Richard Bland and Edmund Pendleton—The Stamp Act resisted—Thomas Jefferson.....	142
CHAPTER XXI.—1774.	
Death of Lord Botetourt—Lord Dunmore succeeds him as Gov- ernor of Virginia—His Difficulties with the Assembly—Indian Troubles—Battle of Point Pleasant—Logan—Meeting of the Virginia Convention in St. John's Church, Richmond.....	153
CHAPTER XXII.—1775.	
Governor Dunmore's Treachery—The Powder at Williamsburg— The Revolution begun—Battle of Hampton—Attack on James- town—The Tories.....	162

CHAPTER XXIII.—1775 (*Continued*).

Dunmore incites the Indians to the Massacre of the Whites—Battle of Great Bridge—Norfolk burned—Gwynn's Island..... 170

CHAPTER XXIV.—1776.

The General Convention meets at Williamsburg—Declaration of Rights—Declaration of Independence—Patrick Henry chosen Governor—The Seal of Virginia—Religious Freedom declared—The Law of Primogeniture..... 181

CHAPTER XXV.—1776-1781.

Troubles in the State—Fears of a Dictator—La Fayette and De Kalb arrive—Thomas Jefferson appointed Governor—British Troops enter Hampton Roads—Defeat of General Gates in North Carolina—Convention Troops in Albemarle..... 189

CHAPTER XXVI.—1781 (*Continued*).

Revolutionary War transferred to Virginia—Richmond abandoned—The Traitor Arnold—Baron Steuben and George Rogers Clarke—Death of De Kalb—Cornwallis marches towards Petersburg—Colonel Tarleton's Raid..... 197

CHAPTER XXVII.—1781 (*Continued*).

Legislature at Charlottesville escapes from Tarleton—Monticello—Outrages of the British Army—Cornwallis retreats to Chesapeake Bay—He fortifies Yorktown—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Virginia Heroes..... 205

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1781-1800.

"Crazy Rumsey"—Washington at Mount Vernon—Convention at Philadelphia—Virginia Convention meets to discuss the New Constitution—Virginia joins the Federal Union—Washington elected President—Kentucky admitted into the Union—Federalists and Republicans—Alien and Sedition Laws—"Resolutions of '98"—Patrick Henry's Last Speech—John Randolph of Roanoke—Deaths of Patrick Henry and Washington..... 217

CHAPTER XXIX.—1800-1813.

Callender's "Prospect before us"—Insurrection of Slaves—Burning of the Richmond Theatre—War of 1812..... 231

CHAPTER XXX.—1818-1859.

Virginia the "Mother of Presidents"—University of Virginia—Death of Thomas Jefferson—The Virginia Constitution and the Men who made it—Troubles between the States—John Brown's Raid 238

	PAGE
CHAPTER XXXI.—1860–1861.	
Causes of the Civil War—Consequences of the Election of Abraham Lincoln—Virginia passes the Ordinance of Secession—Attitude of Maryland—Comparative Resources of the North and South..	251
CHAPTER XXXII.—1861 (<i>Continued</i>).	
Preparations for war—Virginia War Leaders—Federal plans—Battle of First Manassas—Summary of events of 1861.....	258
CHAPTER XXXIII.—1862.	
A Memorable Year—Jackson's Valley Campaign—Operations in Southeastern Virginia—Monitor and Merrimac—Peninsula Campaign—Second Manassas—The Maryland Campaign—Summary of events in 1862.....	267
CHAPTER XXXIV.—1863.	
Battle of Chancellorsville—Death of Jackson—Battle of Gettysburg—Summary of events in 1863.....	278
CHAPTER XXXV.—1864.	
Change of Military Policy of Federal Government—Operations in the Valley—General Early's Campaign—Butler at Bermuda Hundred—Grant and Lee in the Wilderness, Spottsylvania, Cold Harbor—Siege of Petersburg—Summary of events of 1864.....	282
CHAPTER XXXVI.—1865.	
The Surrender at Appomattox—Closing events of the War—Results of the War—Loss of West Virginia.....	290
CHAPTER XXXVII.—1865–1890.	
Divisions of the Chapter—Murder of President Lincoln—Disputes between President Johnson and Congress—Virginia under Military Government—Disaster at the Capitol—Death of General Lee—Governors of Virginia since 1873.....	296
CHAPTER XXXVIII.—1890–1914.	
The State Debt—The Readjuster Movement—Educational Progress—Literary Progress—Material Prosperity—The Spanish War—The Jamestown Exposition—The Constitutional Convention—Virginia, Past and Present.....	303

HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

PERIOD I: COLONIAL VIRGINIA, 1607-1775.

CHAPTER I.

1492-1585.

EARLY DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

Traditions.—1. The Irish and the Welsh. The honor of having discovered America is claimed by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Norsemen; that is, the inhabitants of Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and Iceland. Far to the west of Ireland, the Irish claim to have found a beautiful land in which they dwelt for a number of years. Madoc, a Welsh prince, sailing in the same direction, narrates that he found a great and fertile country with lofty mountains, clear lakes, and large streams. On his return home he persuaded a number of his countrymen to accompany him on a second voyage. These venturesome Welshmen were never heard of again. If they reached America, no traces of them have ever been found.

2. The Norsemen. About the Norse discoveries we know more. They certainly settled Greenland, and their colony there lasted more than a hundred years. One of the Norse explorers, Bjarne, while on the way to Greenland, was driven southward by a violent gale and saw an island in the distance. He did not go ashore, but when he told his story to a great Earl of Norway, Eric the Red, who had discovered Greenland, Eric's son Leif (life) was greatly stirred by the tale. He bought a ship and set sail with thirty-five companions to discover and explore the new land. He reached, finally, a place somewhere near the

Massachusetts coast, as is supposed, and called the newly discovered country Vinland, from the number of wild grapevines seen there by him and his companions. This happened about 1,000 A. D.

Columbus.—But we know very little of these and other traditional explorers. The glory of having discovered America is, therefore, justly due to Columbus. October 12, 1492, he landed on San Salvador, probably the same as Watling Island, one of the Bahamas, and in three other voyages discovered Cuba, Haiti, Porto Rico, Jamaica, and many other islands in the West Indies.

The Cabots.—The success of Columbus fired the ambition of all the nations of Europe, but England was the first of these to send out an exploring expedition. In 1497, Henry VII., King of England, empowered John Cabot and his three sons to “set sail, discover countries, and take possession for the Crown of England.” They discovered the coast of Labrador, in 1497, one year before Columbus, on his third voyage, set foot on the mainland of North America, and later went as far south as Florida.

Raleigh's Expeditions.—But it was nearly one hundred years before the English took advantage of their new possessions. In 1576, Martin Frobisher, a great navigator, tried to plant a colony; and, in 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert was lost at sea in his effort to plant another. His half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, was hardly more successful. In 1584, this accomplished nobleman, high in the favor of Elizabeth, Queen of England, fitted out two ships, with his sovereign's permission, and placed them under the command of Captains Amadas and Barlow. These, following the course of Columbus, reached the West India Islands, remained there a few days, and then directed their course north. Attracted by the delicious perfume of fruits

and flowers which a kindly breeze wafted to them from the fragrant shore they landed finally upon the coast of North Carolina, not far from Cape Hatteras, and took possession of the country in the name of her Sovereign Majesty, Queen Elizabeth. Charmed with the tall trees, green fields, and abundant grapevines, they clambered to the top of the high cedars, in order to obtain a more extended view, and gazed with rapture over the exquisite landscape. Here the English first became acquainted with turkeys, potatoes, tobacco, and Indian corn (maize).



THE ENGLISH RECEIVING INDIANS.

At first it seemed that this beautiful land was given over to the birds and beasts. On the third day, however, a small canoe, in which were three men dressed in the skins of wild animals, put out from the neighboring shore. They approached and boarded the ship without any sign of fear, and one of them, who seemed to be the leader, acted as spokesman for the rest; but his speech, full of impressive gestures, and doubtless of eloquent language, was in a

tongue not one word of which could be understood. The English, unable to reply, but wishing to show a friendly spirit, presented the natives with shirts and hats, wine, and meat. After a visit of some length the strange guests departed as they had come, but soon returned with the boat loaded with fish and game, which they presented to the Englishmen. The next day came divers boats with forty or fifty men, and among them Granganameo, brother of the king of this great country. Leaving the boats at some distance, the Indians came towards them. The Englishmen presented the chieftain with many toys, such as beads and pieces of tin, which he received with delight. His men seemed to regard him with great respect, none of them speaking a word, except four who seemed of higher rank than the rest, and to whom alone he gave presents of the treasures bestowed upon him. These they received humbly, making signs that all things belonged to him.

Granganameo paid them many visits after this, bringing presents of deerskins and other things; and after a few days he brought his wife and children. The former was of small stature, very pretty and bashful. She was dressed in a long coat of leather, with a band of white coral about her forehead, while strings of pearls as large as peas hung from her ears and reached nearly to her waist; she wore her long black hair hanging down on both sides, and the men wore theirs long on one side and shaven close on the other.

The English remained some time in this place, trading with the natives, and obtaining from them, in return for the useless toys with which they presented them, many articles of value, such as pearls, dyes, and game of various kinds. They learned, too, a great deal about the soil of the country, which they found to be more fertile than any they had ever known, producing three crops of corn in one year.

Roanoke Island.—One day Captain Barlow and seven of his men paid a visit to Granganameo, their new friend, who had his home on Roanoke Island. As they approached the place, they saw before them a little village of nine or ten Indian houses, built of cedar, and fortified, after their manner, by sharp stakes or palisades driven into the ground. Seeing her visitors approaching, the wife of Granganameo, like a true hospitable Virginian matron, ran down to the shore and received them with every sign of joy. She told them that her husband was away, and commanding her people to draw the boats to shore, made them carry the guests on their backs to the houses. Here she entertained them with great honor, setting meat and fruit before them, having their clothes washed, and in her simple, natural way doing all she could to testify her delight at seeing them. In one of the houses she showed them her idol, about which she told wonderful things. When some of her men came in with their bows and arrows, and the Englishmen acted as if they feared treachery, their hostess caused the bows and arrows to be broken in pieces, and the owners of them to be beaten out of the house. The Englishmen returned to their encampment next day, much pleased with their visit, and during the whole of their stay in that country continued on the most friendly terms with their Indian neighbors. Upon their return to England, they gave such glowing accounts of the land that Queen Elizabeth called it Virginia, in honor of herself, the virgin Queen of England.

Religious Beliefs.—Some interesting facts were ascertained about the religion of the savages. They believed that there were a great many gods, but one greater than all the rest, who had existed from eternity, and who made all things. They worshipped the sun, moon, and stars as gods. They believed that the soul would live forever in

happiness or in misery. The English tried to teach them about the true God and the Bible. The simple creatures listened to them with interest, and taking the Holy Bible in their hands kissed it reverently, held it to their breasts, and stroked their bodies over with it. Once, being very sick, their king refused help from his own friends, and sent for the English to come and pray for him, that if he died he might live with their God in heaven. Soon after this a circumstance occurred which increased their fear and reverence for the God of the English. Great sickness prevailed in many of their settlements, the name of which we are not told; but it so happened that the disease was most fatal in places which were inclined to be unfriendly to the English. The simple creatures, therefore, believed that the English were actually destroying their enemies by prayers to this great Being. Thus all the surrounding tribes hastened to claim the friendship of this powerful people of an all-powerful God.

Lane's Colony.—But this friendly feeling did not last long. The year after the expedition of Amadas and Barlow, Sir Richard Grenville, accompanied by Ralph Lane, the governor of the new colony, made a settlement in Albemarle Sound, on Roanoke Island, the home of Granganameo. During one of Grenville's expeditions an Indian stole a silver cup from the English, and in revenge the English burnt an Indian village. After this the friendship between the savages and the settlers was at an end. The Indians, to get rid of the English, told Lane that the headwaters of the Roanoke River were so close to the sea that they were salt. Thinking that this sea was the Pacific Ocean, Lane and his followers set out to trace the river to its source. Their provisions soon gave out and they were reduced to such straits that they were forced to eat

their two dogs. Shortly after this they returned to Roanoke Island, and, when Sir Francis Drake, the great navigator, came from the West Indies, to see how the colonists were faring, they returned in one of the ships to England.

Croatan.—Only a few days after their departure a relief ship, sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh, arrived laden with provisions, but, finding no one, returned to England. The “Shepherd of the Sea,” as Sir Walter was called, was not daunted, however, and sent out, in 1587, to Roanoke Island, a colony consisting this time of men, women, and children. These were in charge of Joseph White, whose granddaughter, Virginia Dare, was the first child of English parentage born in America. Soon after her birth, White left for England and did not return for three years. When he reached the English settlement not a trace of the one hundred and seventeen colonists he had left behind was to be found, except the mysterious word *Croatan* carved on a tree. What became of these hapless settlers has remained a mystery to this day.

QUESTIONS.

1. What stories are told of Welsh and Irish discoveries in America before 1492?
2. Tell the story of the Norse discoveries before this date.
3. When and what did Columbus discover?
4. Upon what discoveries did the English base their claim to North America?
5. What English explorers were there before Sir Walter Raleigh and what did they accomplish?
6. Tell the story of Raleigh's exploration under Amadas and Barlow.
7. What were the religious beliefs of the savages?
8. Give an account of Lane's Colony.
9. Give an account of the colony under Joseph White.

CHAPTER II.

1606-1607.

VIRGINIA THE MOTHER OF STATES—THE LONDON COMPANY SENDS CAPTAIN SMITH TO AMERICA—HIS EARLY LIFE—LANDING AND SETTLEMENT AT JAMESTOWN—WINGFIELD APPOINTED PRESIDENT.

“The Mother of States.”—I have given you an account of the earliest settlements in that part of America which Queen Elizabeth named Virginia, and which extended from the southern part of North Carolina to Canada in length and from the Atlantic to the Pacific in breadth. This was a great country, and the reason you often hear Virginia spoken of as the “Mother of States” is because she gave from herself the territory out of which were formed many of the States of the Union. In those early days all the country to the north of Chesapeake Bay was called North Virginia, and that to the south was called South Virginia.

The first settlements carved out of North Virginia were the New England States, which were settled by the Puritans. The next slice taken out was New York, which was seized by the Dutch, the first discoverers; but it was afterwards given to the Duke of York, after whom it was named. Next came the divisions of New Jersey and Delaware, and the last we shall mention was Pennsylvania, which was settled by the Quakers under their wise leader William Penn, in whose honor the State was named. But we must confine ourselves to that portion which through all these changes still retained the name of Virginia, and which was colonized by Captain John Smith and his companions in the year 1607.

Captain John Smith.—Captain Smith, one of the bravest men that ever lived, has written a book in which he gives an account of his wonderful adventures. An Englishman by birth, he had, when quite young, a great desire to go to sea, and even sold his satchel, books, and all he had, intending secretly to carry out his design, but was prevented by his father's death. He afterwards travelled through most of the countries of Europe. Once while at sea, like a second Jonah, he was thrown overboard by the superstitious sailors, who imagined that he brought ill luck to their vessel. However, he managed to reach a desert island, whence he was rescued by a passing ship. He afterwards fought against the Turks, and with his own hand killed three of their officers. He was taken prisoner by them and sold as a slave. A bashaw* bought him and sent him as a present to his mistress, who fell in love with him and treated him very kindly, but Smith only thought how he could escape and return to his own country.

The bashaw, who had command over the prisoners, was very cruel to them. One day, when Smith was threshing wheat, this man reviled and struck him, upon which Smith turned and beat out the brains of his persecutor with an instrument which he had in his hand. Then throwing the body into the house, he locked the door, filled his sack with corn, and, mounting the bashaw's horse, rode away, taking the direction towards Russia. After many more adventures he returned to his own country, where he was made a knight by the king, who also bestowed many other honors upon him. Too restless to be content with a quiet life, he determined to seek new adventures in the great country which had been discovered, and about which the whole world seemed to have gone mad.

*Earlier form of *pasha*, Turkish governor of a province.

The London Company.—Certain merchants and rich men of London had permission from the king to settle a colony in the country called Virginia, and for this purpose obtained, for fifty miles along the sea-coast, a grant of land, which was to belong to them and their children. The company to whom this permission was given was called the London Company, and another party of men called the Plymouth Company had a similar privilege granted them. The London Company fitted out three small ships, and in them sent Captain John Smith, Bartholomew Gosnold, Edward Maria Wingfield, and many others to find out a suitable place for their settlement, and to take possession in the name of their king, James I. The conduct of the ships was trusted to Captain Newport, and the Rev. Mr. Hunt went as the chaplain of the company.

They set sail from England about the middle of December, but were detained by contrary winds, within sight of the shore, for six weeks, in which time Captain Smith found he had rather an unruly crowd to deal with. Each man imagined he could manage better than his fellow, and they quarreled with Captain Newport because they did not get on faster, with Captain Smith for ever having started the expedition, and with poor Preacher Hunt for not praying hard enough against the winds, which were the cause of their detention. At length, however, Providence favored them, and they reached the West Indies, where they remained for a few days, soothing their ruffled tempers and refreshing themselves after their tedious voyage with the delicious fruits and other productions of these charming islands. Then with renewed spirits, they embarked, bending their course northward towards the coast of North Carolina, where former attempts to colonize had been made. But again encoun-

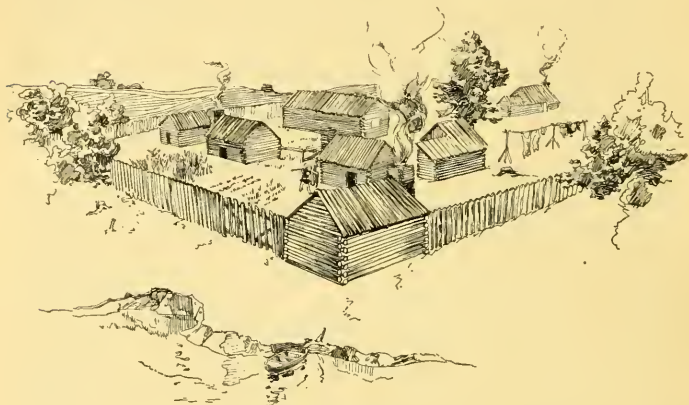
tering storms, they found themselves on the trackless ocean, amid dangers they knew not how great, and again the murmurs arose loud and deep.

Captain Newport, wearied with the difficulties, determined to turn the ships around and go back to England; but God willed it otherwise. A violent storm drove them in towards the shore, and they found themselves at the wide entrance of a great bay, with a cape at each extremity, which they named Cape Henry and Cape Charles, after the two sons of their sovereign. Pursuing their course inward, they touched upon another point of land, at the mouth of what seemed to be a large river leading up into the country. Hoping that their wanderings were now ended and that they would find a desired haven, they named the land Point Comfort. About twenty miles farther on, the country spread out before them in all its grandeur and richness, and the most despondent among them exulted at the prospect. The place where they next anchored was named Point Hope, and the river was called James, in honor of their king. Here they encountered some Indians, who seemed kindly disposed to them, and told them that the Indian name of the river which they had called James was Powhatan. They also said that the greatest tribe in those parts was the tribe of the Powhatans, and that the chief of this tribe, whose name was also Powhatan, was very powerful, and had his home about one hundred and fifty miles above, on the same river.

Jamestown.—Pursuing their course up the river, the English discovered a beautiful peninsula covered with tall trees, growing out of the luxuriant green sod. Here they determined to land, and after much consultation and disputing they planted their colony, calling their first settlement Jamestown in honor of their king. They then proceeded to elect a president and council to govern them.

Edward Maria Wingfield was chosen. Captain Smith, having been accused by Wingfield of an attempt "to murder the council and make himself king," was not allowed to take any part in the government.

The colonists then set to work at once to build a fort as a protection against the savages. It was a busy scene. Some were cutting down trees, others digging holes in the ground, and the sound of the hammer and the axe awakened echoes and startled the inhabitants of these old



JAMESTOWN.

forests. Newport, Smith, and about twenty others were sent to discover the head of the river. Passing many small habitations, in six days they arrived at the dwelling of the great chief Powhatan, which consisted of twelve houses, pleasantly situated upon a hill. Before it were three beautiful islands, and around it the waving fields of corn. The city of Richmond now stands just above the former dwelling of this Indian chief, and the place is still pointed out where his wigwam stood.

Indian Attack.—Smith found that his boat could not proceed farther up the river, because of the falls, and he and his party were obliged to return to Jamestown, where they found everything in confusion. The colony had been attacked by the Indians, one boy killed, and seventeen men wounded. They had all been at work without their arms when the attack was made, and the destruction would have been complete had it not been for the accidental discharge of a shot from one of the ships. This broke the bough of a tree, which fell in the midst of the savages and caused them to retire in haste.

Captain Smith arrested.—The English at once began to fortify themselves as strongly as they could, so as to prevent further surprises. The Indians, however, were fully on the alert; and, in spite of their care, the English were constantly annoyed by them. All this time Captain Smith was in disgrace with the colony. Many among them, envious of his reputation, pretended to think that he wished to murder the president and the council and make himself a king, and these reports gaining ground, President Wingfield made him a prisoner, and accused him to the London Company who had sent him to Virginia. But Smith, strong in his innocence, brought his accusers to shame, and Wingfield was compelled not only to release him, but to pay him two hundred pounds as a recompense for what he had made him suffer. Smith received the money, but gave it to the general fund for the use of the colony.

This was but the beginning of the trials Smith had to encounter, but he bore everything with a patience and dignity that overcame the spite of his enemies. Preacher Hunt also did what he could to establish peace, so a general reconciliation took place. Smith was admitted to the council, all parties received the communion, and the

very next day the savages voluntarily desired peace, and Captain Newport returned to England, bearing encouraging reports of the prosperity of the new settlement in Virginia.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the original extent of Virginia?
2. Why is Virginia called the "Mother of States"?
3. How were North and South Virginia divided?
4. What divisions were afterwards made?
5. With what particular portion of this country has our history to do?
6. Give the story of Captain Smith's early life.
7. How did he make his escape from the Turks?
8. What privileges were granted to the London and Plymouth Companies.
9. Who did the London Company send to Virginia?
10. Give an account of the voyage until they landed at the West Indies.
11. Give an account of the rest of the voyage.
12. What circumstance prevented the return of Newport to England?
13. What names did they bestow upon the four first points of land they reached?
14. What name did they give the river, and what account did the Indians give of the country?
15. Where and when did they land, and what name did they give to their first settlement?
16. What were the first acts of the new colony?
17. Give an account of Smith's expedition up the river.
18. In what condition did he find the colony upon his return?
19. How was Captain Smith treated by the colony?
20. How did he behave?
21. How did the difficulties end?

CHAPTER III.

1607.—CONTINUED.

COLONY REDUCED TO WANT—CAPTAIN SMITH COMMANDS AN EXPEDITION IN SEARCH OF FOOD—ADVENTURES WITH THE INDIANS—MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE INDIANS.

President Wingfield.—From the peaceful close of the last chapter you might suppose that the troubles of our colonists were at an end. This was far from being the

case; for they had to contend not only with the Indians but with their own governor and his friends. Wingfield, thinking only of gain, lost no opportunity of stealing from the public stores to enrich himself. When he had by this conduct made himself hated by all, he tried to seize one of the ships and make his escape, accompanied by one of his confederates; but his design was discovered and prevented. Thus it happened that most of the responsibility of public affairs fell upon Captain Smith, who, by his own example and encouraging words, set the men to work, some mowing, some planting corn, and some building houses. Smith himself always took the largest share of the work, providing all the rest with comfortable dwellings before he built his own. In his intercourse with the savage he also showed his great wisdom, making himself acquainted with their dispositions, their manners, their customs; always securing their friendship if possible, but if this failed, compelling them to fear and respect him by his superiority over them.

Smith's Adventure.—Once, when the colony was greatly reduced by sickness, and starvation stared them in the face, Smith took seven men with him and set out to seek help from one of the neighboring tribes. He proceeded down the river about twenty miles until he arrived at one of their towns, and by signs told the Indians of his great need, but met with derision and contempt. In ridicule they offered him a handful of corn and a piece of bread in exchange for the muskets of his men, and even demanded the clothing of the English. Smith, finding gentle measures useless, resolved to compel them to give him the help he needed. Running his boat into the shore, he and his men fired into the crowd, whereat the Indians fled to the woods. The English made haste to take

advantage of the situation, and going from wigwam to wigwam, they saw heaps of corn and other food, which Smith could scarcely restrain his hungry men from taking until he convinced them that the danger was not over, and that their first duty was to prepare for the return of the savages.

The wisdom of their leader was revealed as the hideous war-whoop sounded, and they saw about seventy Indians approaching from the woods, dancing and singing, some painted black, some red, and some parti-colored. Their god Okee, which was hung with chains and pieces of copper, was before them. Well armed with bows, arrows, clubs, and shields, they charged upon the English with great shouting and cries; but Smith and his men were fully prepared for them, and fired their well-loaded muskets into the midst of them. Down fell their Okee, and numbers of the Indians also lay sprawling on the ground. The rest of them fled to the woods, and soon one of their chiefs approached to beg for peace and to redeem their god.

Smith told them that if six of their number would come unarmed and help him to load his boats with such provisions as he needed, that he would not only be their friend, but would restore their Okee, and give them beads, copper, and hatchets besides. They were very well content with this, and brought Smith venison, turkeys, bread, and whatever else they had, singing and dancing, and making signs of friendship until they departed. The party returned to Jamestown in fine spirits at their success. When the colonists saw the abundant supplies of provisions their spirits revived. Captain Smith made many other expeditions to procure food for the following winter, but what he provided with so much care the rest recklessly wasted.

I will now try to give you some idea of the manners, customs, and religion of the North American Indians when the country was first settled by the English.

The Indian Tribes.—The inhabitants were divided into tribes, which were generally named from the rivers upon which they dwelt. There were the Powhatans, the Chickahomnies, the Potomacs, the Susquehannocks, and the Pamunkeys. All the Virginia Indians belonged to the great Algonquin family, which occupied the region between the Mississippi and the Atlantic, the Great Lakes, and the Carolinas. In Virginia, Powhatan was at the head of a great confederacy of some thirty tribes. The men were generally tall, straight, and well formed, with skin brown more from exposure than from nature, as the child was born white. They had straight black hair, which was worn long. One-half the beard was shaved off, the other half was allowed to grow long. The women filled the office of barbers, and with two shells grated the hair off. Both sexes were very strong and active, able to endure great exposure. They slept by a fire in the open air even in the most severe weather. Their dress was made of the skins of wild beasts, with the hair on for winter and without it for summer. Some wore long mantles embroidered with beads, and others had mantles of turkey feathers, which were very beautiful. The women had their limbs tattooed with pictures of beasts and serpents.

But the most curious part of their dress was their ear-ornaments. Both sexes had as many as three holes bored in their ears, in which they hung chains, copper, and other ornaments; and, what was still more surprising, it was no uncommon thing for them to use small snakes and even rats as ear-jewels. Imagine a great Indian with a green and yellow snake crawling and flapping about his neck,

and often with dreadful familiarity kissing his lips, or a dead rat tied through the ear by the tail! For head-dresses they wore the wings of birds, and some had even a whole hawk or other large bird stuffed, with its wings outspread, perched upon the top of the head; others wore the hand of an enemy, dried. They painted themselves every variety of color, and he was considered most handsome who was most hideous to behold.

They usually dwelt in villages, the houses of which were built of branches of trees tied together, somewhat like a modern arbor, and covered with mats or bark. The women were very fond of their children; and as soon as they were born they began to wash them in the cold water of the rivers and springs, even in the most severe winter weather, in order to make them hardy and robust. They also used paint and ointments to tan their skins, so that in a year or two no weather could hurt them. The men spent their time in hunting, fishing, and fighting, and such manly exercises; but scorned work, which fell to the share of the women, who planted the crops, consisting chiefly of beans, corn, and tobacco; prepared the food, made mats, baskets, and cooking utensils. Their boats were made of the long trunks of trees, hollowed out by burning until they assumed the shape of troughs. They were long enough, sometimes, to hold thirty or forty men. Their weapons were bows and arrows, tomahawks, spears, and clubs.

Hunting Device.—They used a curious device in deer-hunting. This animal, you know, is so timid that it is hard to get near enough to him for a successful shot, so the Indian hunter used to dress in the skin of the animal, and thus disguised go into the midst of the herd. Sometimes when he would be hunting out a good fat buck,

worthy of his arrow, he would see the deer looking curiously towards him, as if they half suspected him of being a cheat, upon which he would lick himself, and by his cunning imitate the motions of the animal so completely as to deceive them entirely, and thus he would shoot many of them.

Religion.—No people has ever yet been discovered without a religion, and all primitive nations have some idea of one Supreme Being. The North American Indians worshipped an evil spirit, whom they called Okee, and who was represented by a hideous image dressed up in beads and copper, after a most fantastical fashion. They did not think it necessary to worship good spirits as these would do them no harm. Their priests arrayed themselves as much like Okee as possible. To make their head-dresses, they collected a quantity of snake-, weasel-, and rat-skins, stuffed them in their natural shapes with moss, and then tied their tails together like a tassel. This was put upon the crown of the head with the skins dangling about the face, and the whole was finished by a great crown of feathers, sticking out of the place where the tails were fastened. Their religious exercises were chanted, the priest leading and the rest following after.

They had great fear and admiration for their king; his commands were instantly obeyed, and when he frowned they trembled with apprehension; and no wonder, for he was very cruel in punishing such as offended him. He would have a man tied hand and foot, and thrown upon burning coals and broiled to death. He would have their heads laid upon stones, whilst his executioners beat out their brains with clubs. When a notorious enemy or criminal was taken, he was tied to a tree, and the executioner with mussel-shells cut off his joints, one after the other, threw them into a great fire, then sliced the flesh

from the bones of his head and face. If life still remained in the quivering carcass, the body was ripped up, and then, with the tree to which it was tied, was burned to ashes.

Against such foes as these the colonists had to contend for more than one hundred and fifty years.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what year did the events recorded in this chapter take place?
2. Did peace and good-will long continue in the colony?
3. To what did they owe fresh troubles?
4. How did Smith act when the responsibility of affairs fell upon him?
5. Give an account of his expedition in search of food.
6. How were the crew received on their return to Jamestown?
7. How were the Indians divided and named?
8. Describe their appearance and manners.
9. Their peculiarities of dress, etc.
10. How did the women treat their children?
11. Tell of the curious Indian device in deer-hunting.
12. Give an account of their religion.
13. How did their kings rule them?

CHAPTER IV.

1607.—CONTINUED.

DISCORD IN THE COLONY—SMITH'S SEARCH FOR THE PACIFIC—HE IS TAKEN PRISONER, CONDEMNED TO DEATH AND RESCUED BY POCAHONTAS.

Discord in the Colony.—While Smith was making expeditions to secure provisions, his enemies at Jamestown were trying to undermine his influence. At one time Wingfield and his accomplice, Kendall, tried to capture the only vessel that remained to the colony and make their escape to England. Smith returned just in time to

prevent this, but not without a fight, in which Kendall was killed.

Smith's Perilous Adventure.—Ralph Lane thought that the headwaters of the Roanoke River reached to the Pacific, and Smith thought the same with reference to the Chickahominy. He made several efforts to reach the Pacific by traveling up this river, but had to return each time on account of the difficulties of navigation. He was so taunted with his failure that he determined to make one last desperate effort to accomplish his purpose. He started in his little boat, with some Englishmen and Indians for his companions, determined not to return until he had succeeded in his undertaking. By cutting down trees and clearing the channel, he advanced until his boat could go no further, and leaving it in an open bay, out of reach of the Indian arrows, ordered the men not to go on shore during his absence. Then taking with him two Englishmen and two Indians he pursued his course up the river in a canoe. As soon as he had left them, the men in the boat, disobeying his orders, rowed to shore, and were surprised by the Indians. It was with difficulty that any of the party made their escape. One of their number, George Cassen, was captured and put to death with the greatest cruelty. Learning from him where Smith had gone, the Indians followed, and soon came upon the canoe with the two Englishmen sleeping beside it, Smith and his Indians having gone into the woods to get food. After having killed the men, the hostile Indians pursued Smith, who soon found himself surrounded by two hundred savages thirsting for his blood.

In this dreadful situation his presence of mind did not forsake him. He tied one of his Indian guides in front of him to protect himself, and shot over his shoulder at

the savages, killing several of them, he himself being wounded in the thigh. Then moving backwards he tried to reach the boat, and thus make his escape; but having his eyes fixed upon the enemy, he came upon marshy ground, into which he sank up to his armpits, and almost expired with cold. Still the Indians were afraid to come



CAPTAIN SMITH TAKEN PRISONER.

near him until he threw away his firearms. Then they drew him out, took him to the fire, where his two companions were lying dead, chafed his benumbed limbs, and finally led him to Opechankanough, king of Pamaunkee.

Captain Smith knew that nothing but his wit could now save his life, so drawing from his pocket an ivory compass, such as is used on ships, he presented it to the king. The

curious savages gathered around, and looked with wonder upon the needle vibrating before them. Seeing them interested, his hopes revived, and partly by language and partly by signs, he told them of the roundness of the earth and of the variety of nations which inhabit it. He explained to them in simple language the course of the heavenly bodies, until they were filled with awe and admiration.

Notwithstanding his eloquence and its effects, an hour afterwards Smith was tied to a tree and surrounded by Indians with arrows pointed at his heart. He gave up all for lost, and, committing his soul to God, prepared to meet his death with unflinching courage; but at this moment Opechankanough held up the compass in his hand, and the Indians laid down their bows and arrows, untied him from the tree, and forming a procession, placed him in the midst, and so led him away. When they arrived at their town, which consisted of thirty or forty houses built of mats, women and children came out to stare at the white man, whereupon the Indians commenced their war-dance, yelling and shrieking with hideous triumph. At length they led Smith to a long house, where thirty tall Indians guarded him, and after a while they brought him bread and venison, as much as would have served for twenty men. At midnight they brought him meat again, and again the next morning, until, remembering the stories he had read about cannibals, he concluded that they were only fattening him to eat him. This idea did not greatly increase his appetite.

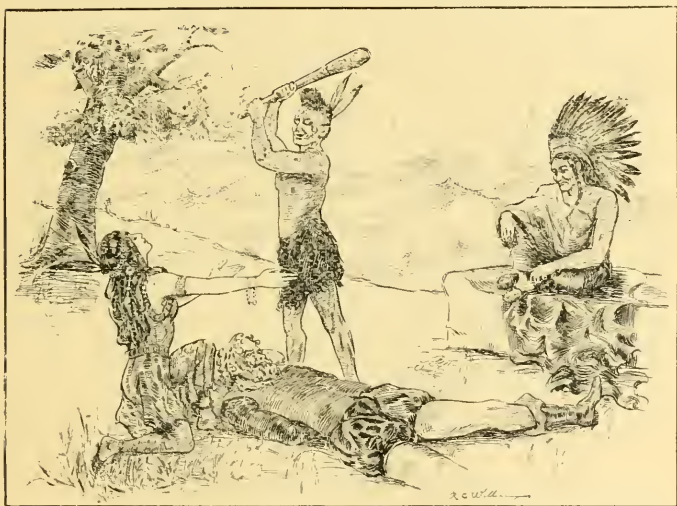
After some days' captivity he was brought before the king, where he was told that the Indians were about to destroy Jamestown, and he was promised his life, liberty, and land if he would give them his assistance. In return he excited their fears by telling them of the dangers they

would encounter from the great guns which belched out fire and smoke, and he offered to prove to them that what he said was true if they would send some of their men to Jamestown to take a mere piece of paper for him. When they agreed he tore a leaf from a blank book, wrote upon it minute directions to the colonists, as to what they should do to frighten the messengers, and also made a list of articles to be sent to him. He then told them, with the manner of a prophet, exactly what would occur during their visit, and gave them the mysterious paper. Of course everything happened as he had said, and they told all these things to their wondering people, declaring that either he was a great prophet or that the paper could speak.

The Indian Conjurers.—They then led him with great ceremonies through all the Indian tribes living upon the rivers in that part of the country, to the king's habitation at Werowocomoco, on the York River, where they called their conjurers and priests together to see what was the will of their Okee concerning their captive. They made a great fire in a long house, with a mat spread on each side of it, on one of which they made him sit down. Presently in there came skipping a large fellow painted black, with a tassel of snakes and weasel-skins, and over it all a crown of feathers upon his head. He began to make a speech in a hideous voice with passionate gestures. Next he walked around the fire and sprinkled a circle of meal. Then in came three more of these monsters dancing and shouting, their eyes painted white: next three more with their eyes painted red. After having danced around him for some time, shouting until he was almost maddened, they led him back to his prison.

King Powhatan.—Three days they kept up these ceremonies, after which they brought him before their great

king Powhatan. Smith found him seated before a fire, upon a seat like a bedstead; he was covered with a rich robe of skins, and on each side of him was a young girl about sixteen years of age. Along the sides of the house were rows of men, and behind them as many women, all with their heads and shoulders painted red, decked with feathers, and with chains of white beads about their necks. When they saw him, the king and all the company gave



CAPTAIN SMITH SAVED BY POCAHONTAS.

a great shout. The Queen of Appamattox then brought him water to wash his hands, and another queen brought a large bunch of feathers instead of a towel for him to dry them. Then they made a great feast for him, and after that held a long consultation about him.

When this was over they placed two great stones before the king, and laid Smith's head upon the stones. Again thinking his last hour had come, he closed his eyes to shut out the sight of the dreadful clubs raised above his head

ready to beat out his brains; when a shriek aroused him, and opening his eyes he saw the beautiful Pocahontas, the favorite daughter of King Powhatan, pleading with her father for his life, while the tears rolled down her cheeks. Finding that her father would not relent, she flew to Smith, laid her head upon his, and declared that she would give her life to save him. This conquered the stern old king, and he released the prisoner. Two days afterwards he allowed him to go back to Jamestown, upon condition that he would send him two great guns and a grindstone. So once more Smith's life was miraculously saved.

On his return he was received with great joy by a part of the colony. As Wingfield and some others were again making preparations to run away with the vessel to England, Smith, at the risk of his life, prevented this, and in return Wingfield and his confederates tried to bring him to trial for the death of the Englishmen who were slain by the Indians. In this also they failed, and Smith at last succeeded in having them arrested and sent to prison. Once more quiet was restored to the colony.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of the events detailed in this chapter?
2. How did Smith spend his time and what difficulties did he encounter?
3. What curious mistake did the English make about the extent of Virginia?
4. Tell of Smith's expedition up the Chickahominy.
5. How were his men captured?
6. Give an account of Smith's dreadful situation.
7. How did he act so as to gain the attention of the savages?
8. What happened next?
9. How was his life saved?
10. Tell the manner in which they conducted the prisoner.
11. What of his trial?
12. Give an account of the preparations for his execution.
13. Who saved his life, and how?
14. How was he received on his return to Jamestown?

CHAPTER V.

1607.—CONTINUED.

NEWPORT ARRIVES FROM ENGLAND—TRADING WITH THE INDIANS—
POWHATAN.

A Visit to Powhatan.—Soon after the events narrated in the last chapter Captain Newport arrived with new supplies. The colonists were overjoyed, and the sailors at once began to trade with the natives, obtaining for a few trinkets quantities of copper and other valuables. Captain Newport sent Powhatan some presents, which so pleased the royal savage that he begged for a visit from the “Great Father,” as he called Newport. It was some time before Captain Smith could persuade Captain Newport to trust himself among the savages, but Smith undertook with twenty well-armed men to encounter the worst that could happen to them; so, fitting up a small vessel, the party started up the river. Landing near the dwelling of Powhatan, they were met by two or three hundred savages, who conducted them to the town.

Here Powhatan received them with great shouts of joy. They found him sitting upon his bed of mats, with a pillow of leather beside him, embroidered after their manner with pearls and white beads. His royal robe was a great mantle of skins which covered him; at his feet sat a handsome young woman, and on each side of his house were twenty more women, their heads and shoulders painted red, and with chains of white beads about their necks. In front of these were the chief men of the tribe, and behind them a guard of about one hundred people; and as the Englishmen passed through this

guard, proclamation was made that none, upon pain of death, should do them any harm. Then followed a long interview between Newport and Powhatan, in which each tried to outdo the other in professions of love and friendship. Next followed a great feast, dancing, singing, and all kinds of merriment. They were entertained that night at Powhatan's quarters.

Three or four days passed in this manner, during all of which time Powhatan bore himself so proudly that all were compelled to admire the monarch who, though he had never been beyond the American forests, was yet every inch a king. Very cunning he was, too, in trading with the English, though in this matter Captain Smith proved himself the better man of the two.

Powhatan's Scheme.—As if scorning to trade as his subjects did, he said, "Captain Newport, it is not agreeable to my greatness in this peddling manner to trade for trifles, and I esteem you also a great chief, therefore lay me down all your commodities together; what I like I will take, and will pay you what I think is their value." Captain Smith saw through his design at once, and told Captain Newport that the cunning savage only wanted to cheat him, and get more for his commodities than they were worth. At first Captain Newport would not believe this; but when he found that Powhatan wanted to get as much for a bushel of corn as he had expected to give for a hogshead, he was very angry, and a quarrel would have ensued between the two if Captain Smith had not interposed by drawing out a string of blue beads, which, attracting the attention of Powhatan, diverted his thoughts in another direction. He at once eagerly bargained for the beads, but the more he wanted them the more unwilling Captain Smith was to part with them. He told Powhatan that they were made of a very rare

substance of the color of the sky, and could only be worn by the greatest kings in the world. This of course stimulated the desire of Powhatan for them, and it ended by the Indian king selling three hundred bushels of corn for a pound or two of blue beads; and yet they parted good friends.



POWHATAN TRADING FOR BLUE BEADS.

They also made the same kind of bargain with Opechankanough, obtaining from him for a few blue beads a quantity of valuable provisions. The party returned to Jamestown delighted with their success, which, however, in the end, did not benefit them much; for as they were storing away these new supplies the town caught

fire, and, being built of wood, almost the whole place, with the arms, clothes, bedding, and provisions of the inhabitants, was destroyed. Good Preacher Hunt lost his library and everything but the clothes he had on, yet no one ever heard him complain. And, to increase the affliction of the colony, this accident occurred in the middle of winter, and a great deal of suffering ensued.

The Gold Fever.—If Captain Smith had been listened to, all hands would at once have set to work to rebuild the town; but just at this time a fever seized the colony most fatal to its prosperity: it was the fever for gold, and pervaded all classes of men. In the bed of one of the streams near Jamestown, among the clay and sand, a shining substance had been discovered, which was pronounced by some, who pretended to have knowledge in these matters, to be gold. At once the farmer left his plough and the carpenter his tools, and all classes and ages of men hurried to possess themselves of the precious metal; so that nothing was talked of but gold, nothing was hoped for but gold, no work was done but to dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, and load gold. The fields, where their true wealth lay, were neglected; their houses, the rebuilding of which was so necessary to their comfort, lay in ruins; their provisions were scarcely enough to support life; and still the mad fever went on. They even loaded a ship with the gilded earth, and putting it under the command of Captain Newport, who was also a victim to this wild delirium, they sent it home to England, where, being examined, it was found, much to their mortification, to be nothing but a worthless mineral.

This disappointment, however, was the best thing that could have happened to the colonists, as they at once abandoned their wild search for gold and returned to their proper employments. Smith, taking advantage of this

favorable change, proceeded to rebuild the city and plant the crops; and soon all were busy and cheerful, cutting down trees, preparing the fields, planting corn, and building houses. A vessel from England that had been thought to be lost, arrived with supplies, which relieved their immediate wants; and, taught by the follies of the past, they grew more hopeful of the future.

Breach with the Indians.—A difficulty with the Powhatans was the next thing that engaged their attention. Captain Newport, anxious to keep on friendly terms with Powhatan, sent the Indian king twenty swords in return for a present of twenty turkeys. After Newport's departure, Powhatan also sent Captian Smith twenty turkeys, expecting a like return, but he found he had a different man to deal with. Smith took no notice of the request, and Powhatan, indignant at the ill success of his scheme, ordered his men to beset the colonists and seize their arms wherever they could find them. This caused constant annoyance; the parties at work were continually interrupted; but so much afraid were they of provoking the enmity of the Indians, that these injuries remained unpunished, until, emboldened by this fact, the savages became more annoying than ever.

Smith's Reprisal.—It chanced, however, that Captain Smith became the object of some of their outrages, and, as may be imagined, he was not one to take this meekly. He hunted them up and down the country, he terrified them with whipping and imprisonment, and kept in the prison of Jamestown seven savages as hostages for the good behavior of the others. They in return captured two Englishmen, and sent Smith word that they should be put to death at once if the Indians were not released. As an answer to this, Smith marched out against them, and in two hours so punished them for their insolence that they

brought him his two men, and without any further conditions begged for peace. He forced them to confess that they had been sent by Powhatan to capture arms to use against the English themselves. This the cunning monarch stoutly denied, and even sent his daughter Pocahontas to Jamestown with presents to Captain Smith, and earnest entreaties that he would excuse the rashness of some of his chiefs, who without orders from him had perpetrated these outrages. Captain Smith punished his captives as he thought fit, and delivered them to Pocahontas, for whose sake alone, he said, he spared their lives and gave them their liberty. By these acts he secured peace and quiet for the colony, and increased the respect of the Indians for his wisdom and firmness.

QUESTIONS.

1. What happened next?
2. Tell of the visit to Powhatan.
3. How did Powhatan try to cheat the English?
4. How did Captain Smith prove as cunning as he?
5. Tell of the blue beads transaction.
6. What happened on their return to Jamestown?
7. What fever seized the colony?
8. What effect did it have on their prosperity?
9. How did it end?
10. What next engaged their attention?
11. Did Smith submit to the will of Powhatan?
12. What did Powhatan do?
13. How did Smith revenge himself?
14. How did the difficulty end?
15. What effect did this have on the savages?

CHAPTER VI.

1608.

SMITH'S EXPEDITION UP THE CHESAPEAKE BAY—QUELLS A MUTINY
—NEW DISCOVERIES AND ADVENTURES.

A New Expedition.—More than a year had now elapsed since the first settlement of the colony at Jamestown, and though Captain Smith had made many voyages for the purpose of learning the extent and resources of the country, yet but little had been really accomplished. You remember that I told you some chapters back that this colony was sent from England by the London Company, and they were permitted to take possession of fifty miles along the sea-coast and one hundred miles back from the coast. This was a vast extent of country, but only a small portion of it had yet been explored. Hence in June of the year 1608, the colony being quiet and prosperous, Captain Smith determined to push his discoveries along the sea-coast. For this purpose he fitted out a boat, and taking with him fourteen men, started down the river towards the ocean. Again they touched at Point Hope and Point Comfort, and recalled the time when, storm-tossed and weary, they had here welcomed the prospect of rest.

Touching at Cape Henry, they crossed the bay to the Eastern Shore, visited Smith's Isles, and then crossed over to Cape Charles. Here two fierce stout savages came to the landing, and holding long poles in their hands, boldly demanded who they were and what they wanted. Finding the English friendly in their answers, they too became very polite, and directed them to Acco-

mack, the habitation of their king. They found him the handsomest and most polite savage whom they had met. These Indians spoke the language of the Powhatans, and as our colonists had become quite familiar with that, they had no difficulty in conversing with them.

Smith and his Crew.—The king was quite eloquent in his description of the bays, isles, and rivers, and excited great expectations in the voyagers, so that they soon left their hospitable host and pursued their voyage. Many were the discoveries they made of islands, rivers, and fertile fields. Sometimes they were kindly received by the natives, at other times they had to fight their way on. Often they were reduced to great straits for want of provisions, when, of course, the crew blamed Captain Smith for bringing them upon the journey; but he bore all their complaints with a patient firmness that overcame their ill-temper. Once, when he could scarcely bear their murmurs, he said to them, "Gentlemen, do you not remember the history of Sir Richard Grenville and his men? how when their provisions were nearly exhausted and he thought of returning, his brave men begged him to let them go forward, as they had two dogs, which, boiled with sassafras leaves, would richly feed them? Then what a shame is it for you, who still have provisions left you, to wish to force my return when we have not even yet heard of what we came out to seek! You cannot say that I have not shared with you the worst of what is past; and I am content that in what is to come you give the worst part to myself. As for your fears that I will lose myself in these unknown waters, or be swallowed up in some stormy gust, abandon such childish apprehensions, regain your old spirits; for return I will not, if God please, until I have found that which I came out to seek."

In the Chesapeake.—Sickness, however, attacked them, and Captain Smith was obliged to return to Jamestown, where he dismissed his crew, took an entirely new set of men, and returned to push his discoveries in Chesapeake Bay. Numerous were the adventures of this party, and great the dangers from which they escaped. They pursued their course up to the head of Chesapeake Bay and



CAPTAIN SMITH REBUKING HIS CREW.

into the various rivers, and made the acquaintance and secured the friendship of the numerous tribes of Indians, who promised to plant corn for the settlement, in return for which the English were to give them hatchets, beads, and other things which they much desired.

Return to Jamestown.—These voyages and discoveries occupied Captain Smith from June until September, during which time he travelled three thousand miles in

an open boat. When he returned to Jamestown he found the colony much reduced by sickness and the bad management of Captain Ratcliffe, who had occupied all the time of Smith's absence in building himself a palace, instead of attending to the wants of the suffering people.

Smith elected President.—And now, in spite of their jealousies, Captain Smith's superiority was acknowledged, as the Council met two days after his long voyage and elected him president of the colony. He at once commenced the most vigorous measures, stopped the work upon Ratcliffe Palace as useless, repaired the church and storehouses, built a new fort, and placed the whole settlement in better condition than it had ever been before. Soon Captain Newport arrived with supplies. He afterwards told Captain Smith that he had orders not to return until he could bring back a lump of gold and had discovered the passage to the Pacific Ocean, which they still imagined lay only a short distance from them. Captain Smith's travels into the country, however, had convinced him that this was a mistake, and he told Captain Newport that the fine ship he had brought would never take them to the sea until they had carried her across high mountains and forests more extensive than they could guess. As to the lump of gold, he besought Captain Newport not again to excite the fever which had been so nearly ruinous to the existence of the colony.

Captain Newport's Instructions.—Captain Newport insisted that his orders were positive, and he said besides, that he had information upon which he could rely, that the country of the Monmachins, who were the nearest neighbors and great enemies of the Powhatans, would furnish them with an abundance of the precious metal. He told Smith that with the view of obtaining the help of the Powhatans in this matter, he had brought with him many costly pres-

ents for Powhatan, among other things a king's crown, a scarlet cloak, bed and bedstead, a basin and ewer, and other furniture; and he thought that if they could get Powhatan to come to Jamestown for the purpose of receiving these presents, they could so flatter him with the grand ceremony of crowning him king that he would be willing to go with them against the Monnachsins. Again Captain Smith remonstrated; he said that it was a great mistake to give all these rich presents to the Indians, that they were now quite as well satisfied with a few strings of blue beads as they would be with all the jewels of England; but if they were taught the use of these additional luxuries, they would learn to value themselves and their commodities at a much higher rate, and so be harder and more expensive to deal with in the future. But his wise counsel was unheeded; Captain Newport would have his own way, and after further consultation Captain Smith agreed to go to Powhatan and invite him to Jamestown.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of the events narrated in this chapter?
2. What extent of country had been granted to the London Company?
3. For what purpose did Captain Smith start on his voyage, and how did his crew behave?
4. At what points did they touch, and what Indians did they first encounter?
5. Describe them.
6. What discoveries did they make, and how were they received by the natives?
7. What difficulties did Captain Smith have to encounter?
8. Tell the story of his remonstrance with his crew.
9. Why were they obliged to return to Jamestown?
10. Did Captain Smith make a second start?
11. How long did these voyages and discoveries occupy Captain Smith, and how far did he travel?
12. What condition of things did he find at Jamestown on his return?
13. How was his superiority acknowledged?
14. What were his first steps?
15. What was Captain Newport's course upon his arrival?
16. What presents had he brought for Powhatan?
17. What remonstrance did Smith make, and was he listened to?

CHAPTER VII.

1608-1609.

WHAT NEWPORT BROUGHT FROM ENGLAND—CORONATION OF POWHATAN—POCAHONTAS AGAIN SAVES CAPTAIN SMITH.

A Visit to Powhatan.—According to the agreement between Smith and Newport related in the last chapter, the former, taking with him brave Captain Waldo and three others of the new-comers, started out for the home of Powhatan. When they reached there they found that he was thirty miles away, and had to be sent for; and the English waited for him in a green field near by. Here they made a fire and seated themselves on a mat before it. Suddenly they were startled by a hideous sound from a neighboring wood. Seizing their arms, they caught one or two old men who were standing by and held them as hostages, thinking that Powhatan and all his force were coming to surprise them. Then came the beautiful Pocahontas from the woods, and delivering herself into the hands of Captain Smith, told him that he might kill her if any harm happened to their party; that she only intended some entertainment for them until the arrival of her father. Thus reassured, they waited the next event.

An Indian Entertainment.—Presently thirty young women, all fantastically painted in different colors, and with bucks' horns on their heads, came singing and dancing out of the woods. One had an otter-skin hanging from her girdle, another a quiver of arrows at her back and a bow and arrow in her hand, another carried a sword, and another a club; each bore a different burden. These rushed from among the trees with most unmusical

shouts and cries, formed themselves in a ring around the fire, and danced and sung for about an hour. They then conducted the Englishmen to a house where a feast was prepared for them, consisting of all the savage dainties that could be obtained, after which, by the light of fire-brands, with singing and dancing, they conducted Smith and his men to their lodgings.

Smith's Parley with Powhatan.—The next day came Powhatan, and Smith delivered his message, telling him that his "Father Newport" had arrived, and had brought him from his brother, the King of England, rich presents, which he begged he would come to Jamestown to receive. He also said that the English would go with him and give him his revenge upon the Monnachins. The proud savage replied, "If your king has sent me presents, I also am a king, and this is my land; eight days I will stay here to receive them; your father is to come to me, not I to him, nor yet to your fort; neither will I bite at such a bait. As for the Monnachins, I can avenge my own injuries. And as for any account you may have from my people of waters beyond these mountains, it is false." He then began to draw upon the ground a wide map of the country. Smith returned to Jamestown with this answer.

The Crowning of Powhatan.—Captain Newport, ever more ready to obey the savages than to compel their obedience to him, sent the presents to Powhatan, and the next day was fixed for the coronation. After much trouble they induced Powhatan to put on the fine clothes and the scarlet cloak, but when the time came for him to kneel and put the crown on his head, he positively refused. In vain they told him until they were tired that the crown made him a king. He said he was already a king, and that it was unkingly to bend his knee; at length, however, by leaning hard on his shoulder, they

made him stoop a little, and placed the crown upon his head. Then, at a given signal, came such a volley of shot from the boats that the new-made king in his crown started up with fear, thinking he was about to be attacked. He soon saw his mistake, and to cover his embarrassment turned to Captain Newport, and with the proud manner of a sovereign to a subject, presented him with his old mantle and shoes.



CORONATION OF POWHATAN.

Return to Jamestown.—Newport tried hard to persuade him to go with them against the Monnachins, but he refused either to go or to lend them men or guides for the purpose. As a return for the handsome gifts which had been sent him, he then presented Newport with seven or eight bushels of wheat ears, and with these the disappointed party returned to Jamestown, inwardly acknowl-

edging the wisdom of Captain Smith, who had given his advice against the plan. Captain Newport still insisted upon the expedition against the Monmachins, and taking with them a hundred and twenty men, among whom was a refiner of precious metals, they started. They found the Monmachins a quiet and peaceable people, with whom they had no difficulty. They also found some earth which their refiner said contained small quantities of silver, but not enough to reward them for their trouble. The Monmachins would not trade with them, pretending to believe that there were ships in the bay which would destroy them if they came to Jamestown. So carefully had they hidden their corn in the woods that the English could not find it. So the expedition returned to Jamestown sick with the disappointment of their gilded hopes, as Captain Smith had foretold.

First Marriage.—This same year Anne Burras, the maid of Mrs. Forest, who had come over in the last vessel under Newport, was married to John Laydon, one of the colonists. This was the first English marriage in Virginia.

Powhatan's Treachery.—I will now tell you how the life of Captain Smith was once more saved by the beautiful Pocahontas. It happened in the month of December. Powhatan was then staying at his favorite residence, Werowocomoco, which was situated on the York River, not very far from Jamestown, and was the scene of Captain Smith's former miraculous escape from death through the love of Pocahontas. Powhatan sent a message to Smith and asked him to send men to build him a house, and to send him also a grindstone, fifty swords, some guns, a cock and a hen; promising in return a ship loaded with corn. Captain Smith was not deceived by the promises of the Indian chief, but corn was most important to the colony; so he sent two Dutchmen and three Englishmen to

build the house. He himself fitted out three vessels with forty-one men and made his way by water to the dwelling of the wily chief.

On the way he was warned by friendly tribes that Powhatan intended his destruction. However, he proceeded on his journey, and on the 12th of January reached Werowocomoco, where he found the river frozen half a mile from the shore. He and his crew broke the ice, waded to the shore, took possession of the first wigwam they saw and sent to Powhatan for provisions. He complied, and the next day visited them. Then began a rare war of wits between Captain Smith and the Indian king, each trying to outdo the other in cunning. Powhatan first said that he had no corn; whereupon Smith reminded him of the promises made through the messengers he had sent to Jamestown. At this Powhatan laughed, said he was joking when he sent the message, and asked to see their commodities. They were displayed, and then the wily king proceeded to ask very high prices for his corn; but Captain Smith would not allow himself to be cheated, and would make none but fair bargains. Powhatan then, with a friendly air, reminded Smith of past favors, and reproached him for coming armed like an enemy. This, he said, so frightened his men that they would not bring their corn to sell. He proposed that they should send their arms away to the boat and show themselves to the people without them, and then they could trade freely. But Captain Smith refused to give up the arms or to sell them, as he had no confidence in Powhatan's professions of friendship.

Wearied with the length of the debate, and seeing that Powhatan only trifled with him, Captain Smith attempted to capture him and so force him to keep his promise, but the chief was too quick for him and made his escape.

Presently the house where the English were was beset by savages. Captain Smith with one man rushed out among them, pistol, sword, and target in hand, and such was their fear of him that as soon as they saw him they went tumbling one over the other, only too glad to escape unhurt. Soon afterwards Powhatan sent one of his orators to them, who thus spoke: "Captain Smith, our chief, fearing your guns, has fled; he only sent some of his men to guard his corn, which might be stolen without your knowledge. Notwithstanding your suspicions, Powhatan is your friend, and will ever continue so. As the ice has now melted, he would have you send away your corn; and if you wish his company, send away your guns, which so frighten his people." But Captain Smith, holding on to his arms, got the corn and loaded his ships.

Pocahontas gives Warning.—That night Powhatan and the wicked Dutchmen who were building his house laid a plan to take the lives of Captain Smith and his men, but at night Pocahontas, ever the guardian angel of the colony, came and revealed to Captain Smith the plot. She told him that a great feast would presently be sent him from her father, and while they were engaged in eating it they were to be surrounded and killed. He in gratitude offered to repay her with such things as she valued most. But with the tears running down her sorrowful cheeks she refused them, saying that she dared not be found with any such things, as her father would find out what she had done and would kill her. Presently it happened as she had said; ten stout Indians came laden with venison, turkeys, and other delicacies, and they were followed by more, and still again by more; but the Englishmen remained on their guard with arms in their hands during the whole night, and Powhatan never knew that his plot was betrayed. The next day they set sail for Jamestown.

leaving the Dutchmen at work upon the house of Powhatan, the stout stone chimney of which still remains to mark the spot where this grand old Indian chief held his savage court, and where his beautiful daughter Pocahontas more than once endangered her own life to protect that of Captain Smith.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of the events recorded in this chapter?
2. What was Captain Smith's next enterprise?
3. What happened upon their arrival at the residence of Powhatan?
4. Give an account of the entertainment provided by Pocahontas.
5. How did Powhatan receive the news Smith brought him?
6. What did Newport do?
7. Describe the coronation of Powhatan.
8. What success did they meet with in their expedition into the country of the Monnachins?
9. What event occurred this same year?
10. What message did Powhatan send Smith, and what was the name of his residence?
11. Point it out on the map.
12. Did Smith comply with the request of Powhatan?
13. Relate the circumstances of their journey and reception.
14. Relate the interview between Smith and Powhatan.
15. What was Powhatan's object, and how did it succeed?
16. What did his orator say?
17. Did Smith get the corn?
18. What plot was revealed to them?
19. How was its success prevented?
20. Relate Smith's interview with Pocahontas.
21. What happened afterwards?

CHAPTER VIII.

1609.—CONTINUED.

THE TREACHEROUS DUTCHMEN—OPECHANKANOUGH—SMITH, BY HIS WISDOM AND BRAVERY, SAVES HIS CREW—ARRIVALS FROM ENGLAND—SMITH'S ACCIDENT AND RETURN TO ENGLAND.

The Treacherous Dutchmen.—Among the last crew of Captain Newport were a number of Dutchmen, who, being strong, able-bodied men and accustomed to labor, were expected to do a great deal of the hard work of the colony. Instead of this they became a source of serious trouble, and were more dangerous enemies than the savages themselves. I told you in the last chapter how some of them, whom Captain Smith had sent to build Powhatan's house, plotted with this crafty savage and would have destroyed Smith and his party but for Pocahontas. After the English had set sail from Werowocomoco, Powhatan quickly despatched two of these Dutchmen across the country to Jamestown.

These told Captain Winne, who was acting as president, that Smith had sent them back for new arms, as the old were useless. Captain Winne, believing what they said, furnished the arms. They then excited the avarice of some of their countrymen by telling them the great promises Powhatan had made to them if they would join him in destroying the English. They were eagerly listened to, and, being expert thieves, they stole quantities of arms and ammunition, secretly conveying them by night to the woods, where the Indians were in waiting. In the morning they returned to the city without exciting suspicion. Some time after this, the Dutchmen who were

with Powhatan wished to leave him and return to the English, but he said to them, "You who were so ready to betray Captain Smith to me will as readily betray me to Captain Smith," and caused their brains to be beaten out with clubs.

Opechankanough.—In the meantime, Smith and his crew, after cruising about the coast, came to Pamaunkee, where dwelt King Opechankanough, the brother of Powhatan, who had promised them large supplies of corn for the colony. Leaving their boats, Smith, with fifteen of his men, went to the house of the king, who soon joined them with numbers of his men carrying scanty supplies of corn for which he asked very high prices. Smith, in great indignation, said to him, "Opechankanough, the deceitfulness of your professions of love is made plain by your actions. You know our want, and we your plenty. We *must* have supplies. You have promised us corn, and kings should keep their promises. Here are our commodities; take what you want, and I myself will make the bargains with your people." The cunning chief pretended to be perfectly satisfied, and sold the colonists corn, promising to return the next day with a great deal more. So they parted, the Englishmen returning to their boats.

Treachery.—The next day they found four or five men with great baskets of corn waiting for them, and Opechankanough, welcoming them with assumed cheerfulness, began to offer them great bargains in corn. Presently in came one of Smith's men and told them that they were betrayed, and that at least seven hundred savages had surrounded the house in which they were. This created great dismay among Smith's party, but he smiled calmly at their fears. He also urged his men to stand by him and promised them, with the help of God, he would not only bring them out of this trouble, but would force the

Indians to give them full supplies of what they needed. His words had the desired effect; their courage returning, they promised him to act as he wished.

Smith's Boldness.—Turning to Opechankanough he told him that he plainly saw through his plot and proposed that the two parties should adjourn to the open field and there settle their quarrel by fighting, the conquerors to remain masters of the country. The cunning king, however, tried to pacify Smith with soft words, telling him that no harm was intended, but that, on the contrary, he had provided a rich present for him, which waited his acceptance at the door. Glancing out he saw baskets of corn guarded by about two hundred men, with their arrows upon their bent bows, and knew at once their design was to get him out of the house, when they would instantly kill him. In a great rage at this deceit, Smith now ordered two of his men to guard the door, and rushed alone into the midst of the king's guard. Before the Indian king had time to make any resistance Smith seized him by his long lock of hair, and put a pistol to his breast. The army of savages was instantly quelled; the guards threw down their arms, and the others were terror-stricken at the man who dared thus to deal with their king. Smith then led the humbled Opechankanough into the midst of his people.

The Indians pressed eagerly forward and laid their baskets of corn at Smith's feet, while the king himself ordered his richest stores to be brought to his conqueror. Smith, still holding him by the hair of his head, thus spoke to them in their own language: "I see the great desire you Pamaunkees have to take my life, and you think because I have not punished your treachery before that you are safe from my revenge. The reason I have borne so long with your insolence is, that I made a vow

before God to be your friend; this vow, if I keep, God will keep me, and you cannot hurt me; if I break it, he will destroy me. But you have broken our friendship by your actions, and now if you shed one drop of my people's blood, or touch with even so much as a finger these beads and copper which lie here before you, I will destroy every Pamaunkee of your tribe; not one shall escape. You promised to load my ship before I departed, and so you shall, or I will load her with your dead carcasses. But if you will come as friends, and bring your corn, I will then remember how once you saved my life when I was in your power. I will trade with you, and be your friend forever."

A Second Attack.—Away went their bows and arrows, and all day long men, women, and children thronged about him, bringing their commodities in as great quantities as he could desire. At last, worn out with the excitement of the day, Smith appointed two of his men to receive the presents, while some others guarded Opechaukanough, and he, throwing himself upon a mat, fell fast asleep. When the Indians saw their great enemy asleep, their fear of him diminished, and about fifty of their chosen warriors, with clubs or English swords in their hands, bore swiftly down upon the house. The noise they made in their haste awoke Smith, who instantly seized his sword and stood ready to meet them. When they came to the entrance and saw him awake, and standing thus with his men around him, their courage deserted them, and they fell back one upon the other, until the house was clear of them. Opechaukanough tried to make excuses for them, which Captain Smith accepted. The Indians then loaded the vessels with their commodities, after which the English took their departure.

Smith's Treatment of Idlers.—After his success in trading with the Indians, Smith returned to Jamestown with

abundant supplies, whereat the delighted colonists prepared to sit down and enjoy in idleness what he had collected with so much risk and toil. But this he would by no means allow. He told them sternly that he who did not work, should not eat. He set each man his allotted task, making his own equal to the best of them, and he who did not fulfil this task was to be sent beyond the limits of the colony, and left to shift for himself.

The London Company.—This rule had the desired effect, and for a time all went well. This happy state of affairs would have continued had it not been for the want of wisdom in the London Company. Becoming impatient at the small returns in money from the colony in Virginia they induced the King of England to allow them to fit out nine vessels, in which they sent five hundred men. These had orders to take possession of the colony, and to send back the men who had so long endured all the dangers of the new settlement.

The confusion that followed may well be imagined. These new arrivals were generally noblemen and gentlemen, unused to work and intent only on their own gain. Seeing this state of things, Captain Smith would willingly have surrendered all and returned to England; but it so happened that the vessel containing the letters of the king appointing the new president had been detained by a storm, and until it arrived he could not desert his post. With his usual energy and patient firmness, he set to work to plant new colonies, and provide as best he might against the evils with which this new arrival threatened him.

Smith's Departure from the Colony.—An unfortunate accident upset all his plans. In September, 1609, while asleep in his boat he was seriously burned by the acci-

dental explosion of a bag of gunpowder. In his agony he leaped overboard and was with difficulty rescued and borne to Jamestown. As a vessel was about to sail for England he determined to return to London for medical treatment. Thus the struggling colony lost their wisest counsellor and best friend at a time when they needed him most.

Smith's Subsequent Career.—Captain Smith never returned to Virginia, but between 1610-1617 he explored the coast of Canada and New England. During his last years he published several books, among which was his famous history of Virginia, from which we learn almost all that we know about the early history of the colony at Jamestown. Captain Smith died June 24, 1631, and was buried in St. Sepulchre's Church, London. He was a man of rare gifts of heart and head, hating baseness and sloth and loving "action more than words." If the colonists had cultivated the soil, as he advised, instead of wasting their time in the feverish search for gold, they would have been spared much misery and would have developed the country more rapidly.

QUESTIONS.

1. What date heads this chapter?
2. What was the plot of the Dutchmen, and what became of them?
3. Where did Smith next go to obtain other corn?
4. How was he received?
5. What did Smith say to Opechankanough?
6. In what great peril did the English find themselves?
7. How did Smith restore their courage?
8. What did he say to the Indian chief?
9. What deceitful answer did he receive, and how did he act?
10. What was the effect of Opechankanough's capture?
11. What did Smith tell them?
12. What did the Indians do?
13. How did they again attempt his life?

14. Did the English succeed in their object, and how did the Indians regard Captain Smith?
 15. What happened upon Smith's return to Jamestown?
 16. How did the policy of the London Company interfere with the prosperity of the colony?
 17. What was the result?
 18. How did Smith act?
 19. What happened to him?
 20. What was the effect of his departure upon the colony?
 21. What were the chief events of his life after he left Virginia?
-

CHAPTER IX.

1609-1614.

ARRIVAL OF SIR THOMAS GATES—JAMESTOWN ABANDONED—THE MEETING WITH LORD DELAWARE—THE RETURN—CAPTURE OF POCAHONTAS, AND HER MARRIAGE AND DEATH.

Murder of the Colonists.—The colonists were soon made to feel the need of Captain Smith's presence and wise counsel. As soon as the savages, who had been kept in awe by him, learned that he had left they revolted and began to murder all the English they encountered; and at last so intimidated the colonists that they seldom dared to go beyond the fortifications at Jamestown. On one occasion Powhatan tempted a party of thirty men, under John Ratcliffe, to come to him for provisions. He slew all of them except one boy, who was saved by Pocahontas, and who, protected by her, lived for many years among the Indians.

Famine and Sickness.—Shut up within the small boundaries of the unhealthy city, afraid to go beyond them either to cultivate their crops or to engage in those other employments which were conducive both to the health and wealth of the colony, distracted by savages without and disorders and mismanagement within, it is no wonder

that in less than six months after Captain Smith's departure the numbers of the colony were reduced from five hundred to sixty men, women, and children. These wretched creatures were forced to eat herbs, roots, acorns, and berries. "One man," says a writer of the day, quaintly, "did kill his wife, powdered her, and had eaten part of her before it was known; for which he was executed. Now, whether she was better boiled or roasted I know not, but of such a dish as a powdered wife I never heard."

Rescue.—All these evils came from their own idleness and mismanagement, as the country was fully able to afford them ample support, from the productions of the field, the game of the forest, and fish of the rivers. To add to their distress, they believed themselves abandoned by their friends in England, as no vessel had come from there for many months. At length, however, when they were reduced to the greatest extremities, Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers arrived with a hundred and fifty men. You can well imagine how the poor, starving, dying men crawled down to the shore to give them welcome, and how they begged, with the tears streaming over their cheeks, to be taken away from this wretched place, where they had suffered so much misery. It was a sad welcome; and so greatly were the new-comers shocked at the condition of affairs, that they readily yielded to the entreaties of these unfortunate men, and determined to abandon Jamestown and return to England.

Jamestown abandoned.—So the next day, after burying the guns and ammunition at the gate of the fort, they all embarked. Some of the people were with difficulty prevented by Sir Thomas Gates from setting fire to the town. They fired a farewell volley, but not a tear was shed at leaving a place where they had endured so much. The boat started down the river, and the men

crowded the decks to take a farewell look at the familiar places along its banks. A feeling of regret must have filled even their bosoms, that this beautiful country, with its great resources, should be given up to the savage. God, who overrules all things, did not intend that this should be, for before they had been many hours on the journey, they saw, coming up the river towards them, a long-boat with



ARRIVAL OF SIR THOMAS GATES AT JAMESTOWN.

despatches from Lord Delaware, who was not far behind, with three vessels and plenty of provisions to last the whole colony a year. As this changed the aspect of affairs, Sir Thomas Gates returned to Jamestown, reaching there the evening of the same day.

Lord Delaware.—The third day after these events, Lord Delaware, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, with all of their men, arrived, and the poor, sick, famished colonists were drawn up to meet him; but when his lord-

ship stepped on shore, he fell upon his knees and engaged in silent prayer before he would submit to their greeting. It was an impressive scene. Adjourning to the church, they listened to a sermon, in which the providence of God in all these matters was plainly shown to them. After this, Lord Delaware made a speech, which was eagerly listened to by the crowd. He traced the course of their disasters, and pointed out to them plainly how their own idleness and folly had been the cause of their ruin. He entreated them to avoid the errors of the past, or he, as their governor, would be forced to draw the sword of justice and cut off delinquents, however great the trial might be to himself, as he had rather shed his blood in their defence than punish one of them.

New Regulations.—This speech was received with great applause, all seeing that in its stern kindness lay a hope for their future. Those who had been there longest knew the evils of misrule, and were willing to submit themselves to the authority of their new commander. Vigorous measures were adopted. The new governor appointed regular hours for work and recreation. Religious services were held twice on Sunday and once in the week, and all were required to attend. New treaties were made with the Indians, and Captain Argall was despatched with a vessel to the Bermudas to bring fresh provisions, but being forced back by a storm, Lord Delaware sent him up the Potomac River to trade with the Indians. Here he found the young English boy whom Pocahontas had rescued, and through him succeeded in opening trade with the tribes of Indians on that river.

The next year Lord Delaware went up the James River as far as the Falls, near which Richmond now stands. Assaulted by the Indians, four of his men were killed, and soon after this he was taken very sick and

forced to return to England, leaving Captain George Percy to act as governor until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, who had been appointed governor by the London Company. The new governor reached Jamestown in May, and found the colony fast falling back to their former condition of poverty, having relapsed into their idle habits since Lord Delaware's departure. He at once set them to work again, punishing with great severity those who would not submit to him.

In August of the next year Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with men and provisions. He built a town upon James River, and called it Henricopolis; it stood some miles below the present site of Richmond. Thus was the colony of Virginia firmly established, and with vigorous management was increasing in prosperity. Their old enemy Powhatan continued to give them trouble, capturing men and arms wherever he could find them. Since the return of Captain Smith to England, Pocahontas had never visited Jamestown, and seemed to have lost her interest in the colony. But in the winter of the year in which Henricopolis was built, an event occurred which again connects her with the history of Virginia.

Plot Against Powhatan.—Captain Argall, while trading with a tribe of Indians upon the Potomac River, heard that Pocahontas was in the neighborhood, with an Indian chief named Japazaws, an old friend of Captain Smith, and determined to take advantage of this circumstance to compel Powhatan to conclude a treaty of peace with the English. He sought out Japazaws, and told him of his desire to obtain possession of Pocahontas, promising that she should be treated with respect, as his only object was to stop the bloodshed which was continually going on between the English and the Powhatans. He also promised Japazaws a copper kettle if he would assist him in his undertaking.

Capture of Pocahontas.—Japazaws consented, and Pocahontas, who believed herself unknown to this party of Englishmen, listened to the wife of Japazaws as she told her how anxious she was to see an English ship, and how her husband would take her if Pocahontas would go with her. For some time she refused, and Japazaws' wife went to her husband and told him she could not persuade her, whereupon Japazaws threatened to beat her if she did not succeed in the undertaking. At last Pocahontas was persuaded to accompany them. They found a feast prepared for them in the cabin, during which Japazaws trod hard upon the foot of Captain Argall, to remind him that he had done his part and the copper-kettle must be forthcoming; so when the meal was over, Captain Argall induced Pocahontas to go into the gun-room while he held a conference with Japazaws. Then sending for her, he told her she must go along with him, and she should never see Powhatan again until she had made a peace between the English and her tribe. Finding herself thus betrayed, the poor girl burst into bitter tears, and the treacherous old Indian and his wife howled melodiously to convince her that they too were the victims of a stratagem.

Captain Argall succeeded at length in reconciling Pocahontas to her situation, by convincing her that her captivity would accomplish what nothing else had ever done,—a peace between the English and Indians. So Japazaws and his wife, receiving their copper kettle and other toys, returned home, and Pocahontas willingly accompanied Captain Argall to Jamestown.

Argall sent word to Powhatan that he held his daughter as a hostage, and that he must ransom her with the prisoners he held and the guns and swords he had stolen. Great were the rage and grief of the old Indian

chief when he heard this news; for he dearly loved his daughter, and he also loved the property of the English with which he must ransom her. Many were the promises he made and broke in his endeavor to cheat his enemies into surrendering her, but it was in vain. They knew him too well to believe in mere promises; so Pocahontas remained at Jamestown.

Marriage of Pocahontas.—Now what could not be brought about by foul means was accomplished by fair; for it happened that after Pocahontas had been two years at Jamestown, Master John Rolfe, an honest gentleman, fell in love with her, and she with him, so they determined in this natural way to unite the English and the Indians. The news of this intended marriage reaching Powhatan, he at once gave his consent, and sent his brother Opachisto, and two of his sons, to witness the marriage and conclude a permanent peace with the English.

Powhatan's Second Daughter.—A messenger afterwards went to Powhatan from Sir Thomas Dale, bearing with him two pieces of copper, five wooden combs, some beads and fish-hooks, and a pair of knives, all of which pleased him well. He was then told that Sir Thomas Dale, hearing of the beauty of his second daughter, desired that she might be sent to Jamestown, that she also might marry an Englishman, and so bind the two nations more closely together. The old chief answered with gravity, "I am very much obliged to my brother for his salute of love and peace, and for his pledges thereof, which I will surely keep, though they are not so ample as what he has formerly sent me. But as for my daughter, I have sold her in a few days past to a great Werowance, three days' journey from me."

The English tried to persuade him to send back what had been paid for her and he should have far more than

this in beads, copper, and hatchets. He answered that he loved his daughter better than his life, and that though he had many children she was his favorite. He further assured them that he would keep peace with the English without this further pledge. He ended his speech thus: "I am old, and would gladly end my days in peace; if you offer me injury, my country is large enough for me to go from you; this much I hope will satisfy my brother. Now, because you are weary and I am sleepy, we will end this." Thus the old king refused a further alliance with the English, making it plain that he had submitted to the marriage of Pocahontas as a matter of necessity.

Pocahontas in England.—The after-history of Pocahontas is short, but of touching interest. Her husband, who was truly devoted to her, carefully instructed her in Christianity, and after a while she openly renounced the idolatry of her country and, confessing the faith of Christ, was baptized in the old church at Jamestown, receiving the name of Rebecca. Two years after her marriage she and her husband went to England, where she was much admired and sought after at the court of King James. She learned to speak the English language quite well, and had one child, Thomas Rolfe, who, after he became a man, visited Virginia and his mother's relatives. From him are descended many of the most prominent families of Virginia.

Her Interview with Captain Smith.—It was while Pocahontas was at the court of King James that she again met Captain Smith, who gives us the only account we have of the interview. Upon seeing him she covered her face with her hands and did not speak a word. At length she said, "They did tell me always you were dead, and Powhatan did send to find out the truth, because your countrymen will lie much." She then added, "You call

Powhatan 'Father,' being in his land and a stranger; and now, for the same reason, I will call you father." Smith remonstrated against this, telling her she was a king's daughter and must preserve her dignity; but she answered indignantly, "You showed no fear to come into my father's country, and to make him and all his people but me afraid, but you fear here in England for me to call you father. I tell you then I will, and you shall call me child, and so I will be for ever and ever your country-woman." The life of this lovely young woman was a short one; she died at Gravesend, in England, four years after her marriage, leaving to history the most beautiful picture of refinement and natural majesty of character, springing up in a wilderness,—a natural growth upon uncultivated soil, a fair flower blooming alone among the sturdy oaks and pine-trees of her native forests. Virginia can not honor too much the memory of this guardian angel of the colony.

QUESTIONS.

1. How were the colonists forced to acknowledge the loss they had sustained in Captain Smith?
2. To what condition was the colony reduced in six months?
3. Relate some incidents of the "starving time."
4. What happened when they were reduced to their last extremity?
5. How was Sir Thomas Gates met on his arrival?
6. Relate the abandonment of Jamestown.
7. What happened next?
8. Give an account of Lord Delaware's arrival.
9. How did he employ his first hours?
10. What did he tell the people, and how was his speech received?
11. What measures did the new governor adopt?
12. What happened the next year?
13. What new town was built, and where?
14. What news did Captain Argall hear while trading with the Indians?
15. Tell of his bargain with Japazaws.
16. How did he obtain possession of Pocahontas?
17. How did Powhatan receive the news of his daughter's capture?
18. How was the union between the English and Indians accomplished?
19. What is the subsequent history of Pocahontas?
20. How should Virginians regard her memory?

CHAPTER X.

1614-1622.

DEATH OF POWHATAN—THE PRICE OF A WIFE—INDIAN MASSACRE—
ENGLISH HISTORY AS CONNECTED WITH VIRGINIA—GOVERNOR
YEARLEY—HARVEY SENT TO ENGLAND—BERKELEY APPOINTED
GOVERNOR.

The Common Fund.—It had been a matter of necessity in the early days of the colony that there should be no separation of property, and that all should work for the common fund. Although, as I have said, this was necessary, yet it was the cause of many evils; no man felt that he was working for himself, but for everybody. If, therefore, one was disposed to be idle, it was easy enough to feign sickness, since he knew he would be supplied from the public fund. This was the chief cause of the quarrels, the idleness, and the want of thrift which marked the history of the first colonists of Virginia.

New Land Regulations.—After the marriage of Pocahontas had established a firm peace with the Indians, it was determined to remedy this evil. Accordingly, each one of the settlers was made the owner of three acres of ground which he called his plantation. Upon this he was forced to subsist with his family, and to pay into the public treasury a tax of two and a half barrels of corn. This had the desired effect. Each man felt that his labor was for himself and his family, and thus thrift and industry were encouraged.

Death of Powhatan.—The year after the death of Pocahontas, Powhatan died. In him the English lost a friend, even though he was bound to them only by ties of interest.

He was succeeded by the treacherous and blood-thirsty Opechankanough, who for some years continued his professions of kindness and good will to the English. There is no reason, though, to believe that he ever cherished other than the bitterest hatred towards them. Perhaps his enmity was due to a recollection of his humiliation, when Captain Smith led him by the hair of his head through the midst of his own people. However this may be, one thing is certain, that, with professions of love upon his tongue, he was bent upon their destruction.

Slavery Introduced in 1619.—One year after the death of Powhatan, slavery was introduced into Virginia. The owner of an English vessel purchased twenty Africans from a Dutch man-of-war, thinking that he was doing an act of kindness, as the poor creatures, crowded together in the hold of a slave-ship, seemed to be suffering great misery. The Virginians had before this depended for laborers upon criminals, who were released from the prisons of England, that they might act as servants for the colonists. The condition of the negroes was pitiable in the extreme; when they were brought to Jamestown I have no doubt the planters thought they were doing God service by taking the poor creatures, teaching them Christianity, and otherwise improving their condition. They scarcely imagined that they were planting an institution which was to bring so much trouble and controversy into the Old Dominion and half the continent of North America.

Wives Imported.—The same year a vessel arrived from England bringing a very different kind of cargo,—a number of young women of good character, to serve as wives for the colonists. In order to defray the expenses of the journey each man was obliged to purchase his wife for

one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco. Afterwards the price of a wife was much higher.

Indian Treachery.—Three or four years passed away without any event of striking interest to the colony of Virginia. Population increased rapidly, and reports of the prosperity of the country reaching the Old World, numbers were induced to emigrate. But the growth of the young nation was destined to receive yet another check from Indian treachery. All this time the English and Indians had been living together as one nation, and so it might have continued but for the circumstances which I will now narrate. An Indian called Jack of the Feather, from his wearing a remarkable ornament of that kind on his head, treacherously murdered an Englishman named Morgan; and Morgan's sons, in their turn, killed him. This act of revenge Opechankanough determined to make an excuse for the entire destruction of the colony. He succeeded in drawing into his devilish plot all the tribes of Indians in the country around, and a day was fixed upon for the terrible outrage.

The Massacre.—The plantations were now so scattered as to make the success of the plan comparatively easy, and the destruction of the colonists would undoubtedly have been complete if a converted Indian had not disclosed the plot to a planter who employed him. Upon hearing the news, this planter immediately secured his own house, rode off to Jamestown and informed the governor, who with all despatch took means to prevent the catastrophe. But he had not time to inform the more distant planters, who were the first sufferers. Soon the light from the burning dwellings showed that the savages were at their work. From home to home they went, murdering men, women, and children, even burning their houses and

driving off the cattle; but such was their fear of the English that wherever they resisted the savages retreated in dismay. At length the whole country was aroused and



MASSACRE OF 1622.

the massacre came to an end, but not before three hundred and forty-seven men, women, and children had been killed.

Captain Smith's Proposition.—Great was the distress of the people of England when the news of this calamity reached them. Many mourned friends among the slain, and others feared for the safety of those who, though still alive, were within reach of the tomahawk and scalping-knife. While the excitement was at its height, Captain John Smith wrote a letter to the king, representing that it was worse than useless to trust any longer to the promises of friendship given by the savage tribes of

Virginia. He said that they must either be driven out of the country or kept in subjection, and offered, if the king would give him a hundred and thirty-seven men, with ships and money, to undertake the accomplishment of one or the other of these objects. He had many objections to encounter, but succeeded in obtaining what he wanted, and, after six years' absence, again set sail for Virginia, but suffered shipwreck and was forced to return.

The Whites and the Indians.—You have heard much said, and will hear still more, about the wrong that has been done to red man by white man; but what would have been said if the civilized nations of the world had turned their backs upon this great continent, with all of its wonderful resources, because it was occupied by a few savage tribes, who were incapable alike of appreciating their possessions or improving them? God for His own purpose makes one nation superior to another, and the history of the world shows that the inferior always gives place to the superior race.

Hostilities Unavoidable.—Could the two people have dwelt together in peace, it would have been wrong for the English to dispossess the Indians; but horrible massacres, occurring after long seasons of peace and apparent friendship, were proof sufficient that no colony could prosper so long as the savage tribes were their neighbors. Had it been possible, it would have been much better for the English to buy the lands from the Indians, and this was done to some extent. As a general thing, however, they were averse to parting with them, and did not recognize a bargain after it was made. Hence, as tranquillity was absolutely necessary to the prosperity of the colony, the savage had to be removed beyond the settlements.

English History.—In order that we may understand fully this period in the history of Virginia, it is necessary

to give you an insight into the history of England at that time, since Virginia was a British province.

Henry VII. narrowly missed the glory of promoting the discovery of the Western World; for Christopher Columbus was actually on his way to England to solicit the help of its sovereign, when his ship was driven back by a storm, and he received the aid of the King of Spain. When the King of England found of what great importance this discovery was to be, he lost no time in fitting out vessels, and sent out the Cabots, who, as I have already told you, discovered the main continent of America.

During the reign of Queen Elizabeth of England several ineffectual attempts were made to colonize America. Elizabeth was succeeded by James I., and he it was who granted a charter to the London Company to plant a colony in Virginia, and they, as you remember, sent out Captain Smith and his companions. Nearly twenty years had elapsed since this settlement, and although the London Company had spent a great deal of money, the colony, as we have seen, did not flourish under its control as it ought to have done.

King James, foreseeing the great wealth which must accrue to the English crown if these colonies were successfully established, determined to take the matter into his own hands. He, therefore, deprived the London Company of its charter. This seemed very much like robbery of the merchants and other rich men who constituted the London Company. Accordingly they offered an indignant remonstrance against this act of the king; but it did no good; King James remained firm. Now, although this was a great misfortune for the company, yet it was the best thing that ever happened to Virginia; for during the eighteen years of the existence of the London Com-

pany the colonists were looked upon as servants of a company that had no settled plan for the improvement of its property. No wonder, then, that the Virginians lost sight of the wrong done to the London Company, and rejoiced in the change of masters.

King James did not live long enough to complete his plans for the government of Virginia, as his death occurred only one year after he had taken the control of the colony from the London Company. His son, Charles I., adopted his father's ideas about the new country, appointed Sir George Yeardley governor, and empowered him to act in conjunction with a council of twelve men, according to such instructions as he himself should send them from time to time. Thus Virginia knew no law but the will of the king. Although it was more agreeable to them than the exactions of the London Company, they soon learned that a change of masters does not always bring entire relief from oppression.

Charles I., of England, although beloved by many of his subjects, was by others regarded as a tyrant. He was very extravagant in his habits, and, as the revenues of his office were not sufficient to meet his expenses, he resorted to unjust taxation. By his order, the Governor and Council of Virginia imposed taxes upon the people, depriving them of their property, and in many ways caused them great distress. The favorites of the king were sent over, with permission to appropriate large tracts of land. These grants often encoached upon the property of those who had for years endured the privations of the life in a new country, and thus saw the results of their labors quietly transferred to others.

Tobacco.—Tobacco had long been the staple production of Virginia. It had been introduced into England by Sir Walter Raleigh, who, you remember, fitted out the

vessels which brought over the first English colonists to Virginia. Some amusing stories are told about this nobleman, who was very clever, and possessed a great influence over his sovereign mistress, Queen Elizabeth. He had imbibed a great fondness for smoking tobacco, and as it was the fashion to follow the example of this court favorite in all that he did, the young noblemen of the court all adopted the habit. One day Sir Walter was smoking his pipe, when his servant, who had just engaged in his service, entered the room. Seeing his master sitting before him, with a volume of smoke curling above his head, the man thought that he was on fire, and threw cold water all over his master.

Raleigh's Wager.—Another day he was smoking in the presence of Queen Elizabeth and the ladies of her court, and made a wager that he could weigh the smoke which ascended from his pipe and curled away until it was lost in the pure atmosphere of the room. Elizabeth bet him five broad pieces of gold that this could not be done. The nobleman, with cool confidence, weighed the pipe of tobacco and then proceeded to smoke it. After he had finished, he carefully weighed the pipe with the ashes, which of course was lighter than the tobacco had been. He then triumphantly declared that the difference between the two must be the weight of the smoke which had escaped. He had fairly gained his wager, and the queen laid the gold pieces upon his extended palm.

Unjust Proclamation.—Since that time the demand for tobacco had steadily increased, and the sale of it brought much wealth to the colony. Imagine, then, the surprise and indignation of the Virginians at a proclamation issued by order of the king, that henceforth no tobacco should be sold except to agents appointed by himself. This brought down the price, deprived the col-

onists of a great source of wealth, and created much dissatisfaction and murmuring among them. They presented a petition to the king, stating a list of their grievances and praying relief; but of this he took not the least notice.

The condition of affairs grew worse instead of better. Tyrannical governors were appointed, who executed the king's command with severity. Seeing that the Virginians had no redress, these governors oppressed them even beyond their authority. At last, in a fit of indignation with one of these governors, Sir John Harvey, who had succeeded Governor Yeardley, the Virginians seized him and sent him a prisoner to England, accompanied by two of their number, who were deputed to tell Charles of the cruelty and rapacity with which this man had discharged his trust.

This was a high-handed act in the Virginians, and one which Charles regarded as rebellion against his authority. As he had appointed the governor, he claimed the right to remove him. Hence he refused to hear the cause, and sent Harvey back to resume his position. Notwithstanding this, the king seems to have appreciated the firmness of the Virginians, for not long afterwards Harvey was removed, and Sir Walter Berkeley, a man every way acceptable to them, was appointed his successor.

QUESTIONS.

1. What years are included in this chapter?
2. What necessary customs prevailed in the early days of the colonies?
3. What change was now made, and why?
4. Who succeeded Powhatan?
5. Was he a friend to the English?
6. Relate the circumstances of the first introduction of slavery into Virginia?
7. What important cargo arrived the same year?
8. What was the progress of the colony for some years?

9. What was the first check its prosperity received?
10. Relate the story of "Jack of the Feather."
11. What use did Opechankanough make of this incident?
12. Give an account of the massacre of 1622.
13. What prevented its being a perfect success?
14. How was the news received in England?
15. What was Captain Smith's advice?
16. Was it right for the English to take the country from the Indians?
17. How should we regard the whole affair?
18. Why did not the English buy the lands?
19. Why is it necessary to give some account of the history of England here?
20. What circumstances of interest to America happened during the reign of Henry VII.?
21. What in the reign of Elizabeth?
22. Of James I.?
23. Why did he take the charter from the London Company?
24. What was Charles I.'s course?
25. Tell the story of Sir Walter Raleigh and the servant.
26. How did he weigh the smoke?
27. How did the Virginians incur Charles's displeasure?

CHAPTER XI.

1644.

OPECHANKANOUGH MAKES WAR AND IS TAKEN PRISONER—HIS DEATH—WAR IN ENGLAND—LORD BALTIMORE SETTLES MARYLAND—CHARLES I. BEHEADED—HOW VIRGINIA GOT THE TITLE "OLD DOMINION."

Opechankanough's Last Struggles.—The Indians had preserved an unbroken peace with the Virginians for twenty-three years; but their hatred, although carefully concealed, was not abated. Laws had been made which obliged them to fix their habitation at some distance from the white men. Opechankanough still lived, though he numbered nearly a hundred years; and so decrepit had he become that he could no longer walk, but had to be carried on a litter before his warriors. His eyelids were

paralyzed so that he could only see when they were raised by his attendants, and yet so fierce was his hatred of the whites that he determined to make one more effort to rescue the country from their grasp.

Gathering the chiefs of the different tribes together, he told them of his plan, and succeeded in inducing them to join him, by promising them all the riches that had accumulated in the country, including arms and ammunition which would enable them to keep possession forever of the land so justly their own. The plot was well laid—not a white man was to be spared—and would have been successful if the Indians had carried it out courageously; but they feared the English too much. The savages struck the first blow and then fled.

Sir William Berkeley, the governor, collecting a body of men, pursued the fugitives, and overtaking the party who were carrying Opechankanough upon his litter, captured him, and took him a prisoner to Jamestown. He was kindly treated, but remained unconquered by age or by misfortunes. The presence of this brave old man excited much curiosity in Jamestown, and many flocked to look upon the warrior who had given them great trouble during so many years. One day hearing footsteps in his room, he caused his eyelids to be lifted, and seeing a crowd of persons before him, sent for the governor and said to him, "Had it been my fortune to take Sir William Berkeley prisoner, I would have disdained to make a show of him." He had probably forgotten the time when he captured Captain John Smith, and led him in triumph through all the Indian tribes upon the Chickahominy and neighboring rivers. He did not continue long in the possession of the English. One of his guards was not ashamed to take advantage of his helplessness, and shot him in the back to gratify a private revenge. He languished for a while, and then died.

Civil War in England.—While these events were taking place in Virginia, England was distracted by a civil war. Charles I. had pursued in his own country the same course by which he had oppressed the colonies in America.

The Parliament.—The government of England consists of the king and the Parliament (the House of Lords and Bishops, and the House of Commons). The members of the House of Commons, like the members of our Legislatures and Congress, are elected by the people to represent their interests. These representatives go to Parliament to carry out the wishes of the people from whom they come, and thus having the good not only of the different portions of the country, but of the whole at heart, make laws suitable to the state of the nation. Now, if it should so happen that one portion of the country should not send its representatives to Parliament, you can understand that, having no one to speak for it, that portion would be neglected in the consultations for the general good. So there was a law made that no part of the country should be taxed unless it was represented. The American colonies were not represented, hence, according to the laws of England, they should not have been taxed.

Quarrel of King and Parliament.—There were two other laws which just now had an important bearing upon English affairs: 1st. The Parliament was always called together by the king, and could meet only by his orders; 2d. The king could make no laws and take no step without the consent of Parliament. I have told you that Charles was in the habit of raising money by taxing the people. Parliament would not give its consent to these taxes, and so there arose a quarrel between the two heads of the government. Charles dissolved the Parliament, refused to call another, and continued to tax his people without

their consent. This lasted for a number of years, and everything was thrown into the utmost confusion. The people groaned under the unjust taxation, and there was no Parliament to set things right.

War Ensues.—Then began a war between the king and Parliament, which resulted in the dethronement and capture of the king, who was afterwards beheaded in front of his palace. Parliament then took the entire control of the affairs of government, and placed at their head Oliver Cromwell, with the title of *Protector*. Now, though the Virginians had suffered much from the unjust taxation of Charles, they were loyal to his cause, mourned his death, and gave no recognition to the Parliamentary government. They were encouraged in this course by Sir William Berkeley, a staunch friend of royal authority. Virginia thus became a refuge for those friends of King Charles that were obliged to flee from their own country.

The Parliament and Virginia.—Parliament then passed a law prohibiting trade with Virginia because she harbored the enemies of the Commonwealth, and instructions were issued for the "reducement of the inhabitants of Virginia to the Commonwealth." In March, 1652, the fleet under Captain Dennis arrived in the river opposite Jamestown and demanded the surrender of the place. In spite of his loyalty to the king, Sir William Berkeley had to submit. The capitulation was made on the 12th of March, and terms highly honorable were granted. Virginia was to have all the privileges of any other plantation in America. The oath of allegiance was to be administered to all the people, but the governor and Council were permitted to wait for one year before taking it. Sir William Berkeley was permitted to send a message to the exiled king telling him of the surrender of the country. They were per-

mitted to use the Prayer-book for one year, upon condition that they did not pray for the king. A few months before this the Navigation Act had been passed, which forbade Virginia to trade with any country except England. She was now permitted free trade, and was to be taxed only with the consent of her *own* Assembly.

Church Disputes.—The Episcopal Church is the State Church in England, and her sovereigns, when they take their coronation oaths, must swear to preserve the faith of this church. As Virginia was colonized by the English, the Episcopal Church naturally became the established church of the colony. The colonists loved this church and shared the dislike of the Mother Country for other forms of Protestantism and for the Roman Catholic Church.

King Charles, although himself a Protestant, had a Catholic wife, and one of his favorites was Lord Baltimore, a firm adherent of the Church of Rome. Finding that his religion interfered with his possession of property in England, this nobleman obtained a grant of land from the king, and came over to Virginia to settle. Here he had the same difficulties to encounter, as the Virginians were averse to the very name of Papist. He seems to have been a very estimable gentleman, and not at all anxious to provoke controversy. Hence leaving the inhabited parts of Virginia, he proceeded up Chesapeake Bay to its head, where he found a beautiful country unoccupied. Returning to England, he obtained Charles's permission to settle a Catholic colony upon land rightfully belonging to Virginia. This State he called Maryland, after Henrietta Maria, the wife of King Charles; and the first city laid out was called Baltimore.

The Virginians did not give up their right to this territory without a struggle; and it was not until after years of controversy that Maryland was recognized as a

separate State. Maryland, therefore, is the eldest daughter of Virginia, being the first State that was formed out of South Virginia.

After the execution of Charles I. an effort was made to force the Marylanders to observe the forms of the Protestant religion; and, for a short time, this was successful. But Oliver Cromwell, the Lord Protector of England, ordered the commissioners "not to busy themselves about religion, but to settle the civil government"; and the Catholics were again restored to their rights.

Virginia Loyal to the King.—Though Episcopacy was the established form of religion in Virginia as well as in England, the contest between Charles I. and his Parliament wrought a change in both countries. The Parliament of England was composed of members from Scotland, who were staunch Presbyterians, whilst those from England were, of course, Episcopalians. The members who adhered to King Charles were mostly of his own faith, and when they were defeated, the Presbyterians were in the majority. When they took possession of the government of Virginia, although the use of the Prayer-book was permitted the Scotch form of worship was also sanctioned. Thus in Maryland and in Virginia the first steps were taken towards that freedom of religion which has ever since been the pride of America.

Oliver Cromwell ruled England for eleven years, and they were years of great prosperity and peace, not only for the Mother Country, but for her colonies in America. His son, who succeeded him, was not capable of filling his place, and this caused such dissatisfaction that many began to turn their eyes to Charles, the son of their late king, and to think that perhaps they would be happier under his government. This ended in his being invited to occupy the throne, which invitation he gladly accepted.

At the period we have now reached he governed the kingdom under the title of Charles the Second.

The "Old Dominion."—About this time Virginia received the title of "Old Dominion." Although she was forced to submit to Oliver Cromwell, she never gave up her loyalty to the king, and sent a small vessel to Flanders, where Charles the Second was an exile from his country. This vessel bore an invitation from the colony in Virginia to Charles to come across the ocean and set up his throne upon her territory, where his loyal subjects would fight to maintain him in that position. Charles had accepted the invitation, and was actually making preparations to become King of Virginia when he received the invitation from his subjects in England to come back to the throne of his fathers. As this was the more important of the two he went, and was proclaimed Charles II., of England. As soon as he was firmly established upon his throne, in gratitude to Virginia for her loyalty, he caused her to be proclaimed an independent member of his empire, which was to consist of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Virginia, and her coat of arms was added to those of the other three countries comprised in his dominions. This was considered a great honor by Virginia, which has ever since retained the title of the "Old Dominion."

Navigation Laws.—During Charles's reign stricter Navigation Laws were passed. These were long a source of trouble and depression to the colony, for they forbade Virginia to trade with any nation but England. She was thus cut off from other markets and compelled to take whatever prices the English might think proper to pay.

QUESTIONS.

1. What date heads this chapter?
2. What was the condition of affairs between the English and Indians?
3. What of Opechankanough?
4. What plot did he conceive?
5. How did he carry it out?
6. What was the result?
7. How did Opechankanough behave as a prisoner?
8. Give the circumstances of his death.
9. What constituted the English government?
10. In what way was the Parliament a governor of the king?
11. How did a quarrel arise between the king and Parliament?
12. What was the result?
13. What part did Virginia take in these affairs?
14. What constituted the church controversies?
15. How was Maryland colonized?
16. Did Virginia willingly give up the territory?
17. What was the state of the churches after Charles's death?
18. Why is it necessary that the student of the history of Virginia should understand these matters?
19. What was the condition of England under Cromwell?
20. How did Virginia acquire the title of "Old Dominion"?
21. What laws were very oppressive to Virginia during the reign of Charles II.?

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON THE COLONIAL PERIOD
I: 1607-1675 (BACON'S REBELLION).

1. What discoveries and explorations were made by the Welsh and Norsemen?
2. Who was the real discoverer of America and what parts did he discover?
3. When and under whom did the English first undertake discoveries?
4. What famous English nobleman sent out several expeditions to America?
5. What was the fate of his several expeditions?
6. When, where, and by whom was Virginia first settled?
7. Give an account of the early life of Captain John Smith.
8. What was the original extent of Virginia?
9. What company controlled the affairs of Virginia at first?
10. When and why did their control cease?
11. What were the chief difficulties that the early colonists encountered?
12. Give an account of manners and customs and religion of the Indians.
13. Who was the head of the Indians in Virginia in 1607?
14. What was his character and how did he treat the white settlers?

15. Tell the story of his daughter Pocahontas.
 16. What were some of the chief adventures of Captain Smith in Virginia?
 17. What troubles did the settlers have with Powhatan's brother Opechankanough?
 18. How was he finally overcome?
 19. Tell the story of the Dutch traitors.
 20. When did Captain John Smith leave the colony and what happened to it after he left?
 21. What new regulations were made about land soon after the marriage of Pocahontas?
 22. When and how was slavery introduced?
 23. What was Virginia's chief crop and how did the king try to control the sale of it?
 24. What civil war took place in England in 1642, and how did it affect Virginia?
 25. How did Virginia get the name of the "Old Dominion"?
-

CHAPTER XII.

1675.

INDIAN TROUBLES—BACON'S REBELLION.

Sir William Berkeley had now been Governor of Virginia for some thirty-three years. He had fostered Virginia in her infancy, and her youth was developing with every promise of continued prosperity.

The Indians had not seriously interfered with the whites since the attempted massacre of 1644, and although the friendship of some of the tribes was still doubted, yet many of them were embracing the Christian faith, and showing a desire to have their children educated. Had the marriage of Pocahontas with an Englishman been followed by others of the same sort, it was believed by many that the intermingling of the races would in one or two generations have wiped out all distinctions and differences. But this was not to be.

The white man regarded his dark-skinned neighbor as an inferior, and the proud savage winced under his knowledge of this feeling. Underneath a friendly exterior he still cherished a vindictive hatred against those whom he never ceased to regard as usurpers of his property and rights.

Hostilities with the Indians.—At the period of which we now speak this enmity between the two races began to show itself. The settlers on the frontier sent to the governor, asking his protection against the tribes in their neighborhood, who were depredating upon them, and murdering those who ventured unarmed into the midst of them.

In imitation of the government of England, the affairs in Virginia were regulated by the governor and an Assembly composed of representatives from all the different counties. The governor could take no step without the consent of this Assembly, called the House of Burgesses. At the next meeting of the Assembly he presented the petition of the settlers, and the grievances were considered sufficient to justify a declaration of war against the Indians. Five hundred men were enlisted and the forts garrisoned. One of these forts was on the Rappahannock where Fredericksburg now stands, another on the Mattapony, another on the Pamunkey, and another at the falls of the Appomattox, near the present site of Petersburg. The little army was put under the command of Sir Henry Chicheley; but just as he was about to march against the Indians, to the general surprise and dissatisfaction of the colony, he was ordered by Sir William Berkeley to disband his forces.

Nathaniel Bacon.—The continuance of the Indian outrages exasperated the colonists greatly, and they determined that if their governor would not defend them

they would defend themselves. This determination was strengthened by the news of fresh outrages on the frontiers; and looking around for some leader qualified to direct their operations, they found just the man they wanted in Nathaniel Bacon, a young gentleman of great popularity, who had his residence on the James River, near where Richmond now stands. The Indians had killed his overseer and one of his servants, and for this outrage he had vowed vengeance. He was chosen general by an army numbering nearly six hundred men, and at once applied to Sir William Berkeley for his commission. The old governor was secretly outraged at this infringement of his authority, but was afraid to resist the demands of this formidable body of men with arms in their hands. In order to gain time, he returned an evasive reply to Bacon's demand for the commission, and sent some of his friends to persuade him to disband his forces. The governor also issued a proclamation, declaring that all who did not return to their homes within a certain time were rebels and traitors. This looked so serious that those who had property, fearing confiscation, deserted Bacon and returned home. Stimulated rather than intimidated by the course of the governor, Bacon refused to yield, and with only fifty men pursued his course towards the frontier. Sir William Berkeley, collecting a troop of horse, pursued Bacon about forty miles and then returned home.

Slaughter of Friendly Indians.—Bacon, with his small body of men, proceeded up the river. Many days elapsed before they encountered the Indians; but at length they found a fort in which were intrenched a party of Mannakins, a tribe which had always been friendly to the English. Bacon, calling to them from across the river, asked for food, offering to pay them

liberally. They put him off with promises for three days, when Bacon, with some of his nearly starving men, waded across the river and again demanded food. Just then a shot was fired from the side of the river Bacon had just left, and one of his men was killed. The idea at once occurred to him that Governor Berkeley had concerted a plan with the Indians for the destruction of his little army, and that they had been kept there by false prom-



BACON BEFORE BERKELEY.

ises for three days until the governor should arrive. In a storm of indignation he ordered his men to advance, and, without taking time for thought, utterly demolished the fort and all that it contained; killing a hundred and fifty Indians, with the loss of only three men. This was a great stain upon the character of Bacon, who was otherwise remarkable for moderation and clemency.

Bacon arrested.—He seems to have been shocked at his own act, as, after this, he disbanded his men and returned home. No immediate steps were taken against him. He was elected to the House of Burgesses from the county of Henrico, and, going down to take his place in the Assembly, was arrested and sent a prisoner to Jamestown, where he was forced to ask pardon for his offences, and to give his word of honor that he would not again offend. He was permitted to take his place in the House, and was promised a commission to go against the Indians. Hearing, however, through a friend, that Sir William Berkeley was dealing falsely with him, and was plotting against his liberty and life, he escaped from Jamestown.

March on Jamestown.—The feeling of indignation felt throughout the whole country at the humiliation to which Bacon had been subjected was so great that in a few days four hundred men joined him. With his force he marched towards Jamestown, determined to obtain the commission which had been promised him. Sir William Berkeley, in alarm, summoned the whole militia of the country to defend Jamestown; but could collect only one hundred men, all the rest having flocked to the standard of Bacon. Indeed half, if not all, of these left were favorable to his cause. In four days Bacon marched into Jamestown unresisted. Nothing could exceed the panic of the House of Burgesses at his appearance, but the citizens rejoiced.

Bacon and Berkeley.—Drawing up his forces on the green in front of the State-House, Bacon demanded an interview with the governor. The old man rushed out into the midst of the rebels, and, baring his breast, cried in an agitated voice four or five times without stopping, "Here! shoot me; 'fore God, fair mark, shoot!" Bacon, advancing courageously towards him, raised his hat and

said, "No, may it please your Honor, we will not hurt a hair of your head or any other man's. In order to save our lives from the Indians we are come for the commission which you have so often promised, and now we will have it!" and Bacon commenced walking up and down excitedly before his men. Sir William withdrew to the State-House to consult with the Burgesses, and Bacon followed him, while a company of his men with their guns cocked advanced to the windows of the room where the Burgesses were assembled, exclaiming, "We will have it! we will have it!" One of the Burgesses, going to the window, waved his handkerchief, exclaiming, "You shall have it! you shall have it!" Bacon harangued the Assembly upon the subject of the Indian outrages, the enormous taxes, and other grievances, and demanded authority to redress at least some of them.

The Burgesses were nearly all favorable to Bacon, but only the governor could give the commission, and he was not easily brought to terms. Finding, however, that there was no escape, he at length signed the commission, and Bacon and his men departed in triumph.

Bacon denounced as a Traitor.—They had scarcely left Jamestown before Governor Berkeley declared Bacon and his followers rebels and traitors, and his commission forfeited. Berkeley then repaired to Gloucester County, where he believed he had many friends, and summoned all who were loyal to the king to rally around him and support him against these disturbers of the public peace. He met with a very different response from what he expected. The men of Gloucester told him that they regarded Bacon as their friend and brother, that he was doing their country a service by fighting the Indians, and they had no wish to bear arms against him; but when he should really become a traitor, the governor might depend

upon them. Berkeley gnashed his teeth with rage at this rebellion against his authority, but stood too much alone to force their compliance.

Bacon's Triumph.—Intelligence of these events was conveyed to Bacon by Drummond and Lawrence, two of his friends, and he said bitterly it was a hard case that while he was hunting wolves which were destroying innocent lambs, he should thus be hunted in the rear like a savage animal. He added, "I am like corn between two millstones, which will grind me to powder if I don't look to it." Retracing his steps, he marched towards Gloucester, intending to force Sir William into a different course of action. The old governor, having no idea of risking a personal encounter, called together the few friends who still clung to his fortunes, crossed the bay and took refuge in Accomac County, where he hoped not only to be out of reach of the "rebellion," but to find many friends to aid him in his time of need. In this latter hope he was disappointed.

Berkeley in Accomac.—By looking at the map you will find that Chesapeake Bay runs up into the territory of Virginia, leaving a long slip of land on its eastern side. This terminates in a peninsula, at the southern extreme of which is Cape Charles. When Captain Smith first brought his colony to Virginia, this peninsula was inhabited by the Accomac Indians, and from them it was named Accomac County. Here it was that Governor Berkeley expected to find hosts of friends. However, he soon perceived that the country was filled with Bacon's earnest sympathizers, who looked so coldly upon the governor that he was forced to conclude that his presence was not desired.

Virginians abandon Berkeley.—When the Virginians discovered that Sir William Berkeley had withdrawn from

the State, as Accomac was regarded in some sort as independent of the government of Virginia, they determined to act as if he had abandoned the conduct of affairs. Bacon called together the most prominent men of the colony at Middle Plantation, where Williamsburg now stands, to consult as to the best mode of conduct under the circumstances. The period for which the governor was elected was ten years, but the fact that this time had long passed was unnoticed so long as Berkeley was regarded as a just and wise ruler; with the good of Virginia at heart. As this was no longer the case, they determined to regard his office as vacant.

The Popular Feeling.—The meeting was a very enthusiastic one, and patriotic speeches were made, in which even the women seem to have had a voice. There was with Bacon one William Drummond, who may be regarded as one of the leaders of the rebellion. Sarah Drummond, his wife, was also an ardent supporter of the cause. She was present at this meeting of the patriots, and rose in the Assembly and said, "The child that is unborn will have cause to rejoice at this rising of the country." A paper, which all signed, was drawn up, in which they set forth the grievances which the country suffered, the burdensome taxes under which the people groaned, the Navigation Act which restricted their commerce, and, above all, the horrors of the Indian outrages to which they were constantly subjected. They spoke of the ardor with which Nathaniel Bacon and his followers had striven to redress these last-mentioned grievances, at the hands of the governor and others. They further bound themselves by an oath to join Bacon against the common enemy, and to defend him against the governor and his adherents. They even went further, and declared that inasmuch as Sir William Berkeley had informed the king that the people of Virginia were rebels and traitors,

and had requested him to send troops to subdue them, they were resolved to resist those troops until the king could be rightly informed as to the true state of the case.

The Indian Power broken.—After this meeting, Bacon departed with his gallant army to attack the Indians. He destroyed several of their towns, and then proceeded to a point where he expected to encounter their whole force. Bacon's Quarter Branch; a little stream on the outskirts of the city of Richmond, marks this point. He met the Indians at Bloody Run, another stream in the same neighborhood, and here routed them so completely that the Indian power in Virginia was forever broken.

QUESTIONS.

1. When did these events take place?
2. What of Sir William Berkeley?
3. What relations existed between the Indians and Virginians?
4. How did the secret animosity of the savage now begin to show itself?
5. In what respects was the government of Virginia like that of England?
6. How did the governor act in this crisis, and how was his conduct regarded by the Virginians?
7. Whom did the Virginians choose as their leader, and what of him?
8. What did Bacon do, and how did the governor regard his demands?
9. How did the governor act?
10. What did Bacon do?
11. Relate the circumstances of the storming of the Indian fort.
12. Was Bacon excusable for the massacre?
13. What did he do next?
14. What happened after his election to the House of Burgesses?
15. Tell of his leaving Jamestown.
16. What was his next step?
17. How was he received by the governor and House of Burgesses?
18. Did they comply with his demands?
19. What course did the governor adopt when Bacon left Jamestown?
20. How did the people of Gloucester receive the governor?
21. How did Bacon receive the news of these events?
22. What course did he take?
23. Where is Accomac County?
24. What did the Virginians do when they found Berkeley had gone to Accomac?
25. What was the character of the meeting at Middle Plantation?
26. Repeat some of the sentiments of the people.
27. What was Bacon's course?

CHAPTER XIII.

1675.—CONTINUED.

BACON'S REBELLION—CONTINUED.

Foes from Within.—Nathaniel Bacon had scarcely accomplished this victory over the Indians, before he received intelligence which again turned his attention to the enemy in his rear. Giles Bland and William Carver, two of Bacon's followers, had seized a ship of four guns, which was commanded by one Captain Laramore. Putting a number of men on board of her, they proceeded down James River and into Chesapeake Bay, which they crossed, and anchored near Accomac County, in the neighborhood of Governor Berkeley's refuge. The object of this expedition was nominally to intercept supplies going to the governor, as Bacon had ordered all vessels to be seized which were found thus employed. Now, though this was their avowed object, it is not improbable that they intended, should the opportunity occur, to take possession of the person of the governor, carry him to Jamestown, and force him to make a peace which would secure Bacon from the annoyance of an enemy in his rear.

Laramore's Treachery.—While Bland, who had already seized several vessels, was cruising in the bay, near the shores of Accomac, Captain Laramore was secretly plotting against him. Laramore sent a message to Governor Berkeley and promised to put him in possession of Bland's ships, if the governor would lend his aid. He also said that if Bland's ships were taken the whole rebel squadron could easily be captured. The message threw the governor into a state of great agitation. Laramore was known to

be an unprincipled and profligate man, and it was not improbable that this very message might be part of a plan to decoy him into the hands of his enemy. But his own condition was desperate. Few of the Virginians still clung to him in his fallen fortunes, and his personal safety was every day becoming more insecure. His spirits rose at the mere thought of the great advantages which would accrue to his cause were Laramore only true to his promises.

The Ship taken.—While he was in this state of indecision, Philip Ludwell, one of his most devoted followers, sought an interview with him, and begged that he might have the management of the affair. The governor consented, and Ludwell, securing two boats, embarked at midnight, with twenty-six of his friends. Guided by a signal from Laramore they were soon alongside Bland's ship, which they boarded before their presence was discovered. Bland and his men, roused from their slumbers by the unusual noises on deck, rushed from their cabins, only to find themselves prisoners in the hands of their foes; and in a few hours the whole navy yielded to the governor's forces.

Berkeley returns.—Nothing could exceed the delight of Sir William Berkeley at this success, which gave him an opportunity to retrieve his fallen fortunes. He at once embarked for Jamestown, which he knew could make no resistance, as Bacon was far away on his Indian expedition with the flower of his army. With the greatest exultation, the governor took possession of his former home, proclaimed Bacon a rebel, and commanded his followers to surrender him and disperse, if they would not themselves be punished as traitors. He then called a meeting of the Council, filling it up with only such men as he knew to be devoted to his cause.

His Success.—Inspired by the example of Ludwell, many now flocked to Jamestown, anxious to show their zeal for the king; and in a few days Sir William Berkeley found himself at the head of an army of nearly a thousand men. This was the news that staggered Bacon, as he was returning victorious from his Indian expedition. In a moment he saw the full danger of the situation. Many of his followers, under the impression that since the defeat of the Indians there could be no immediate call for their services, had dispersed to their homes. Thus Bacon found himself with an army of scarcely three hundred men, worn down with the fatigues of their Indian campaigns, and in want of the bare necessities of life. With these he had to face an enemy more than three times as large, and provided with everything necessary for their comfort and success.

Bacon's Advance.—It is no wonder that for a moment the heart of the young leader failed him; but it was only for a moment. Nathaniel Bacon was of too brave a spirit and too sanguine a temper for despondency to master him; indeed, the very difficulties he had to encounter but stimulated his ardor. He made a stirring speech, the eloquence of which so fired the enthusiasm of his men that they rallied around him, professing their determination to follow him without reinforcements, and never to seek repose until he had led them to a victory which would be the last blow to the hopes and plots of their tyrants. Their enthusiasm rose when they began their march. Want and fatigue were all forgotten, and they listened only to their indignation as they thought of Jamestown, the cradle of the infant colony in the New World, now in the hands of the man who was plotting against their freedom. The army, as it passed through the country, presented the appearance of a triumphal

procession. In the centre were placed their Indian captives, with the arms and plunder which had been taken in battle, covered over with flags and other gaudy displays of military pomp. In their front, upon a spirited steed, rode a gallant figure, whose animated countenance



BACON ADDRESSING HIS MEN.

and courageous bearing proclaimed him one well qualified to inspire an army to dare great deeds and win its way against any odds. This was Nathaniel Bacon, whose eloquence chased away despondency and revived the ardor of that army of which he was the idol.

Jamestown besieged.—The sun was just setting when the little army arrived in sight of Jamestown. From a neighboring height it overlooked the little town, now bright with the rays of the departing sun. Again the

indignant blood flushed the cheeks of the war-worn patriots as they saw before them evidences of the presence of their hated foe. General Bacon ordered a cannon to be fired and trumpets to be sounded in token of defiance; then dismounting he drew, with his own hands, the lines for intrenchments. In this moment of inaction the weary men were about to go to sleep, but they were roused by the spirit-stirring voice of their leader. He himself set the example, and soon all signs of weariness disappeared. Their cheery and brave voices rose in mirth and exultation, patriotic songs mingled with the plaintive evening hymn, as their intrenchments rose like magic beneath the full light of an October moon. Their labor ended, they slept in security behind the breastworks.

At dawn their labors again commenced. Refreshed by slumber, they pressed forward eagerly to receive the commands of their general. A small party was despatched to skirmish near the enemy's lines, in order to ascertain their strength, while the rest of the army waited in the rear, as patiently as they could, the onset of the governor's troops.

Sir William Berkeley was by no means anxious to delay matters. A stern old soldier, the courage of youth still lived in him despite his years. He believed that he was but performing his duty to his king in subduing this dangerous rebellion against lawful authority; he had nothing to gain by delay, as he did not expect reinforcements unless the king's troops should arrive in time from England, and this he had no reason to anticipate. Hearing that Bacon's army was receiving hourly accessions to its numbers, the governor at once mustered his troops, and placed them under the command of Ludwell and Beverley, his two staunchest adherents.

They sallied forth; but soon the difference in the spirit of the two armies became apparent. Berkeley's army was

made up of men picked from the idle and dissolute, most of them without a foot of ground they could call their own, inspired only by their hopes of gain, and the promises of plunder and confiscations which the governor had made to them before they would engage in his service. Bacon's men, on the other hand, fought for their firesides, and for that liberty of opinion and action, the love of which the free life in the wide forests of the New World seems to have inspired in the hearts of the colonists since the earliest settlement in Virginia.

Bacon's Victory.—The governor's troops, under their leaders Ludwell and Beverley, advanced towards the intrenchments with a considerable show of ardor, but the contest lasted only a few minutes. When these paid hirelings received the steady and well-directed fire of Bacon's patriotic little army, they turned and fled back to Jamestown, although their officers implored them, with tears in their eyes, to stand their ground, and thus wipe off this stain upon their courage. Such arguments had no effect upon the panic-stricken fugitives: on they fled, until they reached the protection of their batteries and the cannon from their ships.

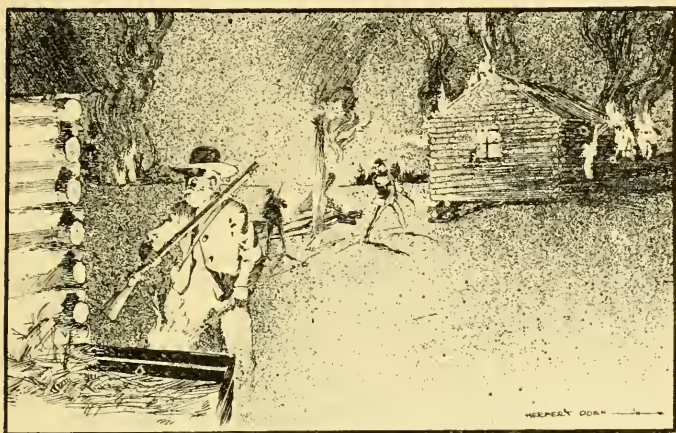
Pursuit checked.—Bacon, surprised at this sudden result, suspected it was a trick to draw his men into an ambush, and checked the pursuit a short distance from his own lines. Had he not done so, the story of this contest might have been ended in a few words, for there is little doubt that if Bacon's army had then pressed forward they might have entered Jamestown almost without opposition from their panic-stricken foes. Sir William Berkeley and all of the officers of the royal government would then have fallen into their hands, and they might have dictated such a peace as would have made Nathaniel Bacon instead of George Washington the Father of Independence.

Governor Berkeley's army not only retreated disgracefully to Jamestown, but the troops threw down their arms, and declared their determination never to take them up again. Neither threats nor promises had any effect on them. Thus the governor found himself in hourly expectation of an assault from the enemy, with only twenty men upon whom he could rely. Even then the proud old man, goaded by his misfortunes into recklessness, would have remained to meet his fate, and, if need be, would have died at his post rather than have retreated from it. However, the arguments of his friends convinced him that it would be better to await at a distance another smile from that fortune which had been so fickle to him. At midnight he and the few friends who remained to him silently and sadly embarked upon the boats which, under cover of the night, had drawn in to the shore for the purpose, and taking with them everything of value, the fleet dropped quietly down the river to await further results.

The City deserted.—The astonishment of Bacon and his men, as these events disclosed themselves on the following morning, may be better imagined than described. They could scarce believe the evidence of their senses as they looked upon the deserted city, and missed first the sentinel from his post and the mustering soldier from the streets. As the drum and the trumpet were silent, and, there were no signs of an army of occupation, they drew nearer to interpret the meaning of the strange stillness. They found the desolation complete. Only two or three frightened inhabitants crept from the houses to give them welcome, and to tell to a wondering audience the events of the past few hours.

Not only was the city deserted, but the houses were stripped of everything of value that could be removed,

and what could not be carried off was wantonly thrown into the river. The enraged and disappointed patriots looked, with burning cheeks and flashing eyes, upon their desolated hearth-stones, while the fleet lay within their



BURNING OF JAMESTOWN.

sight, but far out of their reach, down the river, calmly awaiting their departure in order that Berkeley might return and occupy the city.

Jamestown burned.—But in this expectation he too was doomed to disappointment. “If Jamestown no longer affords a shelter for true Virginians it shall never be a harbor for her enemies,” said General Bacon, in burning words, to his soldiers. As usual, they caught the inspiration from his lips, and soon were seen hurrying with flaming torches from house to house. Many a hardy soldier stood upon his own hearth-stone with the firebrand in his hand and a tear in his eye, as the thought of wife and child and home joys rose before his mental vision. Then, as the

flags of the fleet waving in the distance betrayed the presence of his enemy, and he thought of the oppressor of his country finding shelter under his roof, he cast down the torch and turned away, leaving it to do its work. Even the old church, where for nearly a hundred years prayers had ascended to God, was not spared. Sir William Berkeley viewed with astonishment and indignation this last desperate resort of a determined people, and vowed vengeance against the authors of the outrage.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of the events contained in this chapter?
2. What news met Bacon when returning from the conquest of the Indians?
3. What did Bland and Carver intend to do?
4. What was the cause of the failure of their scheme?
5. Tell of the capture of Bland and Carver.
6. How did the governor receive his success?
7. Relate circumstances connected with his return to Jamestown.
8. What was Bacon's condition when he heard the news?
9. What steps did he take?
10. How was his speech received?
11. Tell of the march to Jamestown.
12. Of their arrival at that place.
13. Of the preparations for battle.
14. Of the fight itself.
15. Of the retreat of the vanquished.
16. What happened the next day?
17. What condition of things did Bacon and his men find when they entered Jamestown?
18. What course did they take?

CHAPTER XIV.

1676.

THE END OF BACON'S REBELLION—LORD CULPEPER—THE TOBACCO REBELLION.

Close of the Rebellion.—Sir William Berkeley, having now no place to organize his government, returned to Accomac. Bacon dismissed the great body of his followers, but engaged them to join him upon the first news of disturbance to the public tranquillity; nor did he relax for one instant his efforts to keep alive their enthusiasm. He went from place to place, inspiring all by his zeal and example, and kept before the people the fact that although all seemed secure, danger was still close at hand. Sir William Berkeley had forwarded to England an account of the rebellion, which he represented as wide-spread and dangerous, and entreated the king to send a sufficient force to restore order. The answer to this appeal was daily expected, and Bacon was determined to resist any army that should be sent against him. Every one of his troops was prepared to defend with his life the cause which was the cause of all Virginians.

Bacon dies.—Yet it is always a great mistake to place the issue of an important undertaking upon the life of a single individual, and never was this more apparent than in the history of Bacon's rebellion. Though he had many brave officers, they were but the creatures of his will, incapable of acting alone. In the prosecution of his plans, Bacon visited all the different military posts, undergoing great fatigue, which, added to a cold he had contracted in the trenches at Jamestown, developed a fatal disease. But

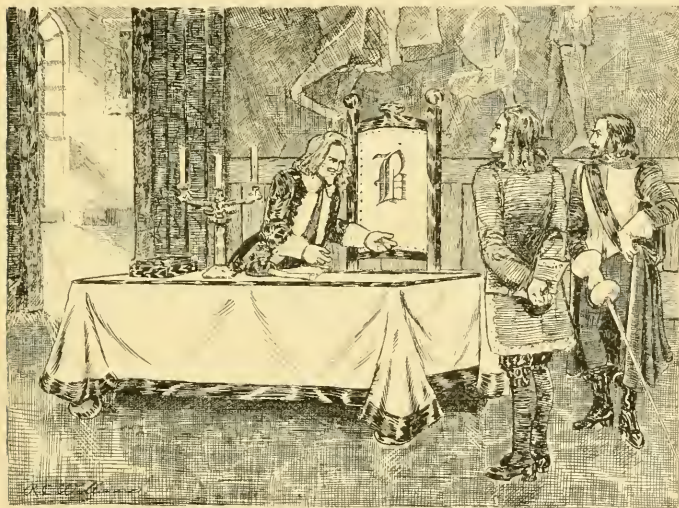
he did not permit his exertions to abate on account of his illness, though its effects were plainly visible. At length, however, he was obliged to yield to a will stronger than his own, and died at the residence of Doctor Pate, in Gloucester County, in the thirty-first year of his age.

The death of Bacon was the knell of the cause for which he sacrificed himself. He left none to fill his place. Two of his captains, Ingram and Walklate, attempted it, but under their leadership the army melted away, and as their fortunes declined those of Berkeley revived. Bacon's followers were hunted down like wild animals. Among the first captives was Thomas Hansford, one of Bacon's warmest friends. After undergoing the mere form of a trial, he was hurried away to the gibbet. His heroic spirit did not quail. He only implored passionately that he might be shot like a soldier, and not die on the gallows like a criminal; but he was told that he was not a soldier but a traitor. He met his fate bravely, calling upon all persons present to witness that he had simply done his duty in taking up arms against oppression, and that he gave up his life willingly for his country. Thus perished the first Virginian who suffered death upon the gallows.

This was but the beginning of the revenge which Berkeley visited upon his victims. It is said that such was his rage against Bacon, that he made search for his body, that he might dishonor the dead patriot who had defied him while living. But his grave was never found; his faithful friends religiously preserved his dust from outrage.

Execution of Prisoners.—As fast as the prisoners were brought in they were led to execution. One Captain Wilford made his appearance before the governor with his wife by his side. She knelt at his feet, and entreated that if one must die that she might be executed.

since she had encouraged her husband to join the rebellion. But the demon of revenge had too entirely hardened the heart of Sir William Berkeley for this touching appeal to reach it; he answered her with insults too gross to be repeated. Wilford had lost an eye in battle, and when allusion was made to it, he answered bitterly that it made no difference, for he had no doubt that Governor Berkeley would give him a guide to the gallows. This proved too true, as the unhappy young man was led out from the presence of his wife to execution.



BERKELEY WELCOMING DRUMMOND.

Berkeley's Malignity. — When William Drummond was captured, the passionate old governor seemed to lose common decency in his vindictive triumph. He bent low before him, with affected courtesy, as he said mockingly, "Mr. Drummond, you are very welcome. I am more glad

to see you than any other man in Virginia; 'fore God! you shall hang in half an hour"; and he was hanged as soon as the gallows could be prepared for him. Nor did Berkeley's fiendish malignity end here; for he pursued the wife of Drummond with his persecution, confiscated her property, and turned herself and five children out to starve. Nay, he would have brought her to a felon's death had not an order from the king come in time to save her.

Giles Bland Hanged.—How far Berkeley's passions would have carried him is not known, for commissioners arrived, appointed by the king to inquire into the condition of things, and many pardons were issued. Even these, in some instances, Berkeley dared to set aside; as in the case of Giles Bland, who, you remember, was captured on the coast of Accomac, and had ever since been in irons. His friends had sent over to the king, who granted him a special pardon, but the governor sent him to the gallows. He met his fate with conscious innocence, and his name was afterwards one of the most distinguished in the annals of American freedom.

Berkeley's thirst for blood seemed to increase with what it fed on, and as one of the Burgesses said, "He would have hanged half the country if he had been let alone." Charles II., King of England, whose father, you remember, perished on the scaffold, and who himself had received, both during his exile and after his restoration, many gratifying proofs of the loyalty of his subjects in Virginia, was horror-stricken when the news of Berkeley's severity reached him. He said, "That old fool has hanged more men in that naked country than I have done here for the murder of my father."

The King's Commissioners.—To such an extent did he carry his revenge that he succeeded in disgusting

even the House of Burgesses, which was made up of creatures too much like himself to be easily touched with compassion. They voted an address imploring him not to shed any more blood, as "none could tell how, where, or when it would terminate." When his active cruelty was over, Sir William Berkeley had time to note the change of feeling towards him in this people over whom he had ruled so acceptably for nearly forty years, and whose love and veneration for him had turned to detestation and abhorrence. Charles II., in order to put an end to these scenes of blood, sent over commissioners to Virginia, and these issued a general invitation to all to come and state their grievances. At once the tribunal was crowded with sufferers from Berkeley's cruelty. The widows and orphans of those who had been executed came weeping and invoking justice upon the head of the tyrant. Men whose lives had been spared only to see all of their property confiscated, begged for bread for their wives and children. The commissioners applied to the governor for the restoration of the property of these unfortunates, but he had either taken it for his own use or bestowed it upon his favorites, and refused to give it up.

The end of Berkeley.—That best of all books, the Bible, says, "Be sure your sin will find you out," and this was verified in the case of Sir William Berkeley, who, though he affected to despise the opinion of the people, could not help being mortified at the course the commissioners were taking by order of the king, for they showed undisguised disapproval of his conduct and disregard for his wishes. At length he resolved to go to England and make a statement of his position to his Majesty, which he felt sure would reinstate him in the royal favor. But in this he was mistaken. If possible, he found fewer friends in England than he had left

in America. The king positively refused to receive him at court, and the proud old man, unable to support the mortification of this blow, died a short time after his arrival in England.

New Governors.—He was succeeded in the government of Virginia by Herbert Jeffries, who exerted himself wisely and well to restore peace to the country. He made a treaty with the Indians of the west, which unhappily they did not regard for any length of time. Sir Herbert Jeffries did not live long to see the fruits of his wise government; he was succeeded by Sir Henry Chicheley, who took active measures against the encroachments of the Indians, causing forts to be erected in various unprotected places, and in many other ways he ingratiated himself into the respect and affection of the people.

Lord Culpeper.—Very different was the course of Lord Culpeper, his successor. At first he was so popular that the people voluntarily increased his salary, and in other ways gratified his desire for wealth; but it very soon became evident that the love of gain was the ruling passion of his heart, and to this the good of the people over whom he ruled must give way. He received an immense grant of land from the king, in what is known as the Northern Neck of Virginia. This tract embraced the territory lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers, as far back as the head-waters of the north branch of the Potomac, which lie in the Alleghany Mountains.

When Lord Culpeper succeeded in amassing great wealth he had no idea of remaining in the forests of a new country, where he could have no enjoyment of it; so leaving Sir Henry Chicheley as his deputy, he returned to England, where he lived in great luxury at court, without spending many thoughts upon his deserted people.

The Tobacco Rebellion.—After his departure commenced what is known as the Tobacco Rebellion. I have told you before that from the time of its first settlement, tobacco was regarded as the most valuable production of Virginia soil. Since the days of Sir Walter Raleigh the demand for the fragrant weed had been on the increase. For a long time it was used as money by the colonists. Articles, instead of being valued at so many dollars, were sold for so many pounds of tobacco. It would have looked very strange to you, if you could have seen the wives and daughters of the old Virginia planters going into Jamestown on their shopping expeditions, with their wagon-load of tobacco behind them, and purchasing rich silks, linens, and laces at so much tobacco a yard. Nor was this all: the preachers, the lawyers, the doctors, were all paid for their services in tobacco.

The increased demand for tobacco led the Virginians, in the days of which we are now speaking, to devote the largest part of their time and land to raising this great source of wealth. At one time laws were made restricting the raising of tobacco and forcing the planters to plant corn and other crops necessary for their subsistence. At last, to a great degree, the custom of using it as money was done away with, though the salaries of the ministers, were, for many years afterwards, paid in tobacco.

Action of the Burgesses.—Notwithstanding this change of custom in the use of tobacco, it was still a great source of wealth; the people were again permitted to plant as much of it as they pleased. Vessels came from England, and returned loaded with the precious weed. For many years after the settlement of Virginia, Jamestown was the only town in the State; and after it was burned, the necessity of some place where trade could be carried on was severely felt. In order to facilitate the building of

towns, the House of Burgesses passed a law that certain places along the river-bank should be selected as the sites for future cities. In order to force the people to congregate at these particular points, the law provided that all ships which came to Virginia for purposes of trade should receive their cargoes only at the designated places, instead of being loaded as had heretofore been done at the plantations upon the river. The Burgesses thought that the planters would thus be compelled to build warehouses, and other conveniences, for storing their crops, and so the foundation of the desired cities would be laid.

The Planters resist.—Now this plan may have been wisely conceived, but it could not be carried out, and the very effort to force compliance with an inconvenient and unpopular law came near arousing another rebellion. The planters living upon the rivers thought it a hard case that, instead of loading the vessels at their own doors, they should have the great inconvenience and expense of transporting their crops to these imaginary cities. The vessels would often go up to the designated points, find no cargo ready for them, have to wait at great expense until it could be hauled from considerable distances, and, as it often happened, have to return home empty. Out of these inconveniences grew a disregard of the law. The planters would load, and the captains of vessels would receive their cargoes, where it was most convenient: the high-spirited Virginians refusing to submit to what they considered an infringement upon their rights.

The Law sustained.—In Gloucester County some of the planters, who were forcibly prevented from disposing of their tobacco as they pleased, fell to work and destroyed their entire crop; and their example was followed by many others. This looked like open rebellion. The Assembly, frightened at the storm they had raised,

appealed, in their dilemma, to the king, who ordered Lord Culpeper back to quell the disturbance. His lordship obeyed, in no amiable mood at being thus forced to leave the luxuries of the English court to contend with rebels in the forests of Virginia. He determined to end his exile and the revolt as speedily as possible. His measures were sufficiently vigorous, as the jails were soon filled with prisoners, and a penalty of death was proclaimed against all "plant-cutters." Six men were actually executed for this trifling misdemeanor. This summary mode of proceeding had the desired effect, and the planters submitted to what they could not cure. Thus ended the Tobacco Rebellion.

QUESTIONS.

1. What year heads this chapter?
2. What sad event occurred to put a stop to the war?
3. How did Governor Berkeley behave?
4. Who was the first Virginian who died on the gallows?
5. Relate the circumstances.
6. Did Berkeley's cruelty end here?
7. Relate the story of Captain Wilford.
8. Of William Drummond and his wife.
9. Of Giles Bland.
10. How did the Burgesses regard Berkeley's conduct?
11. What did King Charles say about it?
12. What did the Burgesses do?
13. What steps did the king take to stop bloodshed?
14. What condition of affairs did the commissioners find?
15. What became of Berkeley?
16. Who succeeded him, and what is related of his government?
17. What of Sir Henry Chicheley?
18. What of Lord Culpeper?
19. Relate the circumstances which had made tobacco so largely cultivated in Virginia.
20. What steps were taken to restrict its cultivation?
21. Was it still valuable after it ceased to be used as money?
22. How did the government try to force the building of towns?
23. What effect did it have?
24. Relate the circumstances of the Tobacco Rebellion.
25. How was it quelled?

CHAPTER XV.

1684-1723.

TREATY WITH THE FIVE NATIONS—WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE
ESTABLISHED—PARSON BLAIR AND GOVERNOR SPOTTSWOOD—THE
KNIGHTS OF THE HORSESHOE.

The Five Nations.—For twenty years after the Tobacco Rebellion there are few incidents that deserve more than a casual glance. Lord Howard of Effingham, succeeded Lord Culpeper as Governor of Virginia, and it was during his term of office that hostilities with the Indians were recommenced. This was followed speedily by a treaty of peace with the tribes known as the Five Nations, who came from what is now the western part of the State of New York. These were the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas: and if you will glance at the map of New York, you will find their names in those of the cities and lakes in the vicinity. These Indians were generally esteemed to be the most powerful and dangerous tribes in North America. In war they were terrific, and united the cunning and sagacity of the savage with the skill of civilized nations. Even the English, with all their knowledge of the art of war, found it difficult to deal with them, and the rumor of their advance was always received with horror and consternation. A writer of the times, in describing them, says, "They advanced like foxes, attacked like lions, and retreated like birds." They had subdued all other Indian tribes and united them with themselves, and were extending their power even into Southern Virginia.

Treaty of Peace with the Indians.—The colonies of the different provinces became alarmed, and Governor

Howard, of Virginia, and Governor Dungan, of New York, met at Albany to confer with the chiefs of these several tribes. After having complained of their aggressions and acts of cruelty, the governor threatened to retaliate unless the Indians would make a firm treaty of peace with the whites. If, however, they would consent to the terms laid down in this treaty, the chain of friendship was to be brightened and made stronger and more lasting than ever. An orator of the Mohawks replied in a speech full of the figures for which their language is remarkable. He promised that the peace between themselves and the English should be firmly kept; and then, after the manner of their people, they buried five axes, in token of the burial of strife. After this all the Indian tribes united in singing the peace-song, with demonstrations of much joy, and thanked the Governor of New York for his mediation with the Governor of Virginia in their behalf.

William and Mary.—In 1685 there was another change in the government of England. Charles II. died, and was succeeded by his brother, James II.,—the first Roman Catholic sovereign who had sat upon the English throne since Mary, the sister of Queen Elizabeth. For reasons which have no bearing upon the history of Virginia, the English expelled him from the throne after he had been king only two and a half years. He was succeeded by William, Prince of Orange, and his wife Mary. They ruled jointly under the title of “William and Mary.”

A Virginia College.—The next year Francis Nicholson was appointed governor of Virginia, February 19, 1693; during his term of office, the King and Queen of England granted to Virginia a charter for the establishment of a college in that province. It had heretofore been the custom to send the young men of the colony to England to be educated: but Governor Nicholson, upon his introduction

into office, suggested the idea of a Virginia college, and put his own signature at the head of a subscription-paper for the purpose. In a very little time, with the assistance of some merchants in London, twenty-five hundred pounds were subscribed, and the Virginia Assembly sent "Parson Blair" to England to solicit a charter from the king. He was successful, and the foundation of the college was laid at Middle Plantation, where, you remember, Bacon and his men held their deliberations after the burning of Jamestown. The town was called Williamsburg, in honor of the king, and the newly-founded college was called William and Mary. The streets of the city were to be laid out so as to form the letters W and M, but this plan was not fully carried out.

Mr. Blair was appointed the first president of the college, which became the pride of Virginia. It is the oldest college in the United States, except Harvard, in Massachusetts. In 1699 the seat of government was removed to Williamsburg, which thus became the centre, not only of learning, but of the wealth and fashion of Virginia. In 1705 the college was burned to the ground, and many years elapsed before it was rebuilt.

Governor Spottswood. — Years now rolled quietly away, marking only increased prosperity to Virginia. When William and Mary died Anne, the sister of Mary, succeeded to the throne. It was during her reign that a gentleman was appointed governor whose name Virginia will always cherish with gratitude. Alexander Spottswood, a Scotchman, who had distinguished himself in the British army, left the hardships and honors of the battle-field to fill the office of chief executive in Virginia. He did more for the improvement of the province than any of his predecessors.

His Plans.—Fired at the thought of lands, mountains, and rivers as yet unexplored, he wished to signalize his term of service by extending his knowledge of this great country. Accordingly he went before the General Assembly of Virginia, and offered to head an expedition across the "Appalachian chain of mountains," as the Alleghanies were then called. After some discussion, he succeeded in obtaining its consent, and a promise was given to furnish him with ample means to carry out his design.

His Expedition.—As soon as it became known that Governor Spottswood was organizing an expedition for the purpose of new discoveries, he had no difficulty in filling up the ranks of his little army. Soon a gallant array of cavaliers presented themselves, eager to share in an enterprise which promised so much variety, honor, and increase of wealth, with enough of danger to make it all the more attractive to the bold Virginians. The hardest horses in the country were pressed into service, and soon the streets of Williamsburg presented a busy scene as the gay cavalcade, with the governor at its head, started forth with their faces turned towards the distant mountains.

The Start.—In our day it is difficult to realize what a formidable undertaking it was to attempt the passage of these mountains. It seemed like an attempt to conquer nature itself; but the romance and peril of the attempt acted as a stimulus to the governor and his followers, who fondly imagined that their names would go down to posterity side by side with that of the great Alexander. They crossed the York River, and started merrily upon their journey; stopping at night with friends upon the route, and gathering recruits for their little army as they went along.

Passage of the Mountains.—So leisurely did they proceed that more than a month had elapsed before they began the toilsome ascent of the mountains. When at length they gained the summit, their ecstasy was too deep for words, as they viewed the beautiful panorama before them.



GOVERNOR SPOTTSWOOD'S EXPEDITION.

The Expedition returns.—Upon the top of the mountain they drank the health of his Majesty, and called it Mount George, in honor of him. The next peak they named Mount Alexander, after the governor. Descending the mountain, they crossed the Shenandoah River, which they playfully named Euphrates. On its banks they rested for some hours, or beguiled the time hunting, fishing, and feasting. Some carved their names on

the trees; some, more ambitious, climbed the steep sides of the rocks and tried to carve imperishable memorials upon their granite surfaces; and the governor wrote upon a sheet of paper, "I take possession of this country in the name of his Majesty King George of England," and signing his name upon it, enclosed it in a bottle and buried it on the banks of the river. This interesting record of the journey has never been found, and in all probability it still remains buried to this day. Turning their faces homeward, they reached Williamsburg in safety, after an absence of about six weeks, and dispersing to their different habitations, recounted to eager listeners their adventures in this the first expedition across the Blue Ridge Mountains of Virginia.

Knights of the Horseshoe.—The Virginians had been accustomed to ride their horses unshod, the soft sandy soil of the lowlands requiring no protection for the horse's hoofs; but for the trip to the mountains they had provided a quantity of horseshoes. In allusion to this circumstance and as a memorial of the expedition, the governor, upon his return, gave to each of his companions a miniature golden horseshoe, to be worn upon the breast. King George, when he heard of the expedition, bestowed upon Spottswood the honors of knighthood, and also presented him with a golden horseshoe set with jewels, which is said to be still in possession of one of his descendants. All who took part in the expedition were recognized by the title of "Knights of the Horseshoe."

Prosperity under Governor Spottswood.—Governor Spottswood's administration was marked by the steady prosperity of Virginia; he neglected nothing which could minister to this end. He attempted what was neglected by most of the other governors,—namely, the improvement of the Indians. He sent good men among them to teach them the arts of civilization, and even had some of the

Indian boys admitted to William and Mary College, to be instructed in whatever would conduce to their advancement.

Blackbeard the Pirate.—During his administration the shores of America were infested with pirates, who captured vessels going to and from the country, and perpetrated acts of the most terrible cruelty. One of the most distinguished of these pirates, John Teach, was known as Blackbeard, and his ferocity made him the terror of the seas. The stories that are told of this fiend in human form almost exceed belief. He is said, on one occasion, to have dressed up his crew to personate devils, and he himself represented the chief fiend.

His Defeat and Death.—Many unavailing efforts were made to capture Blackbeard; Governor Spottswood offered large rewards for his person living or dead. Hearing definitely of his whereabouts, Lieutenant Maynard, commander of a small English ship-of-war, started in search of him. He found him lying in wait at one of the inlets to Pimlico Sound, and at once bore down upon him without giving him time to escape. Blackbeard discovering the ship-of-war close to him, made preparations for battle, placing one of his men at the powder-magazine with orders to blow it up if there was danger of capture, and drinking brandy until he was ready for any reckless deed whatsoever. A terrible fight followed in which the pirate was defeated. The wretch, covered with wounds, waited until the English boarded his vessel, and then gave orders to blow up the magazine, intending that his captors should share his destruction. But he was disappointed; the courage of his man failed, and he threw down the fatal match. Blackbeard sprang up, his face distorted with anger, cocked his pistol and aimed it at the delinquent, but before he could fire it off he fell back on the deck and expired.

Spottsylvania.—Although Governor Spottswood was so much beloved by the people of Virginia, yet he fell under the displeasure of the British Ministry, who did all they could to thwart his plans for the good of the colony, and at length removed him from office. He retired to his country-seat in the county, which had been called in his honor “Spottsylvania.” On his immense estate of 85,000 acres, in what are known as Orange, Culpeper, and Spottsylvania counties, he discovered iron and established iron foundries, the first known in North America. Here he passed his closing years and died in 1710.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. Who was Governor of Virginia after Lord Culpeper?
3. What important treaty did he assist in making?
4. Who were the Five Nations, and where did they live?
5. How do the writers of the times describe them?
6. Tell of the treaty.
7. What important changes took place in the English government?
8. Whom did King William appoint Governor of Virginia?
9. What important privilege did he solicit for Virginia?
10. What steps did he take to accomplish his purpose?
11. With what success?
12. Tell of the foundation and name of the new college.
13. What happened to it in 1705?
14. Who was appointed governor by Queen Anne?
15. What of him?
16. What scheme did he devise?
17. What steps did he take for accomplishing his purpose?
18. How does the attempt look to us now, and why?
19. Tell of the journey.
20. What names did they give the mountain peaks?
21. Tell the rest of the story.
22. What were the adventures called, and why?
23. What other improvements did Governor Spottswood undertake?
24. What infested the shores of Virginia?
25. Who was Blackbeard?
26. What steps did the governor take for his apprehension?
27. Tell of Maynard's expedition.
28. Tell of Blackbeard's death.
29. Why was Governor Spottswood removed from office?
30. Where did the governor die, and when?
31. What did he do for Virginia?

CHAPTER XVI.

1723.—CONTINUED.

DIFFICULTIES BETWEEN THE COLONIES—COLONEL WILLIAM BYRD
LAYS THE FOUNDATION OF RICHMOND AND OF PETERSBURG—
SETTLEMENTS IN THE VALLEY OF VIRGINIA—EARLY CUSTOMS.

Closer Relations between the Colonies.—About this time the colonies in North America, heretofore almost as distinct as England, France, and Germany, began to feel their dependence upon each other. New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia were like a band of young sisters, bound together by ties of a common interest, and united for purposes of self-defense, though their governments were still distinct.

A Colony Quarrel.—During the administration of Governor Gooch, one of the best of Virginia's colonial governors, a quarrel arose between the neighboring colonies of Virginia and North Carolina about their boundaries, each claiming a tract of land lying upon their border. For a long time people living upon this disputed territory did not know which colony to claim as their home. This led to many difficulties, as some would pay taxes to North Carolina, others to Virginia. At last it was determined to settle the matter before the disagreement became too serious. The governors of the two colonies appointed commissioners to meet and travel through the country with engineers, and run the line over again straight, so there could be no further mistake.

Colonel Byrd.—At the head of the Virginia Commission was Colonel William Byrd, a gentleman of great distinction and originality. He has left a narrative of his

adventures, which is full of interest, in which he tells many amusing stories, besides giving us a picture of the settlements in that part of the country in these early days. Many of these are valuable contributions to the history of the State.

Richmond and Petersburg founded.—The most lasting memorial, however, which he has left is the city of Richmond, of which he laid the foundation; also of Petersburg, about the same time. It was expected that these two cities, one at the head of navigation on the James River, and the other on the Appomattox, would become great centres for the trade of Virginia, as the two rivers upon which they were situated constituted convenient outlets into Chesapeake Bay.

Settlement of the Valley.—In 1726, settlements began to be made in the beautiful Valley of Virginia. From Pennsylvania came a number of Scotch-Irish settlers, who, in consequence of religious persecution in their own country, emigrated from the north of Ireland to America, and had at first fixed their homes in that colony. Finding the fertile fields of the Valley open to their occupation, they now moved onward and took possession. William Penn had so wisely dealt with the Indians in Pennsylvania that they regarded him as a benefactor, and this movement into the Valley was not interrupted by them. The new settlers proposed buying the lands of the Indians as William Penn had done. This they did to some extent, but a serious difficulty arose. The Valley was looked upon as a common hunting-ground, and no tribe could be found who claimed it as their particular property. A number of families, headed by Joist Hite, obtained a grant for forty thousand acres of land, which they located in the lower part of the Valley of the Shenandoah. Having settled on it, they gradually extended their

settlements up the Valley to a point near the spot where the town of Woodstock now stands. Two small houses were erected on what was known as Shawnee Spring, the present site of the city of Winchester, which was afterwards the frontier outpost for the settlers in that part of the Valley.

Burden's Grant.—When the reports brought back by Governor Spottswood and his party about the Valley reached the ears of two newly-arrived emigrants to Virginia, named John Mackey and John Lewis, they visited it with a pedlar named Salling. They were so delighted with this fertile region that they determined to fix their abode there. John Lewis obtained a grant of a hundred thousand acres of land, which he located in the Valley, and was visited in his mountain home by an agent of Lord Fairfax, named Burden, who spent some months in hunting through the forests. Returning to Williamsburg, Burden presented Governor Gooch with a young buffalo calf which he had captured, and in return the governor gave him a grant for five hundred thousand acres of land in the Valley, upon condition that within ten years he would settle upon it one hundred families. If this was accomplished, he should have one thousand acres in the neighborhood of every house. Burden returned to England for emigrants, and the next year, 1737, brought upwards of one hundred families to settle upon the granted lands. The first party was soon joined by others, mostly of their connections and acquaintances in the mother country. These again drew others after them; and they increased and multiplied, until before the first generation had passed away the land was filled with them. Then they began to send forth colonies to new lands, southward and westward, until now their descendants are scattered over the whole country.

Scotch Settlers.—Burden's grant covered a greater part of Rockbridge County, and was settled by the McDowells, Alexanders, Paxtons, and many other equally well-known families. They were mostly Scotch Presbyterians, and were distinguished for their simplicity and integrity. They devoted themselves to agricultural pursuits, built churches, and in the enjoyment of religious freedom and home duties passed their simple lives.

Nearly twenty-years passed away before the settlers had any difficulty with the Indians, for the Delawares and Catawbas were busily engaged in war at the time the Valley was first known, and many years afterwards. There are many evidences throughout the Valley of the furious contests between these two powerful tribes. It was one of the customs of the Indians to bury their dead, not in single graves, but in mounds; and some of the mounds have been found which are eighteen or twenty feet high and fifty or sixty feet wide.

Customs of the People.—It was fortunate for the new settlers in Virginia that their savage neighbors were so deeply engaged in their own affairs that the colonies had time to grow without interruption, so that they were in some degree able to defend themselves when defense became necessary. Some of the customs of these early inhabitants of the Valley of Virginia, most of which were derived from the Germans, were very curious.

Marriage Festivities.—A wedding, then as now, excited the attention of the whole neighborhood. It was celebrated at the home of the bride, and was almost the only frolic that their lives of hard labor allowed. On the morning of the wedding-day, the groom and his four attendants met at his residence and proceeded towards that of the bride. This they were obliged to reach by noon, that

being the hour at which the ceremony was generally performed. Then the fun began, and all the neighbors joined in it. The groom and his party found the narrow roads obstructed by fallen trees and grape-vines tied across the way. These they must stop and remove. Next they were ambuscaded, and a discharge of guns enveloped them in smoke. But in spite of these interruptions, the groom could not be behindhand, and the hour of noon would generally find him at the appointed place. The bridal-party proper consisted of the bride and groom, and four groomsmen, dressed in moccasins, leather breeches, leggings, and linsey hunting-shirts, all home-made. The ladies were dressed in linsey petticoats, with linsey or linen gowns over them, coarse shoes, coarse stockings, cotton handkerchiefs, and buckskin gloves. If the ceremony took place at the church, the whole party—mounted on horses eaparisoned with old saddles, old bridles, and a blanket or bag thrown over them—would have to encounter the same obstructions in their pathway, placed there by their fun-loving neighbors.

Running for the Bottle.—After the ceremony was performed they would return home, and the way thither was beguiled by various amusements, one of which was called “running for the bottle.” A big bottle, named “Black Bettie,” was filled with whiskey and placed at some designated point (generally at the house of the bride) on the road. Then two young men, mounted on their horses, would run a race for this prize, taking an even start, which was announced by an Indian whoop. Off they would go, their horses at full speed, dashing over rocks, stumps, and any other impediments. The victor announced his success by another yell, and then returned to the company, holding the bottle high above his head. It was presented first to the bride, who must at least taste

it, then to the groom, and then to each of the party, no one being allowed to refuse to take a drink.

The Wedding Dinner.—Immediately after arriving at the house, dinner, for which literally the fatted calf had been killed, was announced, and a most substantial meal it was, consisting of beef, pork, fowls, bear's meat, venison,



RUNNING FOR THE BOTTLE.

bread, butter, honey, maple-sugar, wine (if it could be had), potatoes, cabbage, and other vegetables. These were set out on old pewter dishes and plates, wooden bowls, and trenchers. If knives were scarce, the guests made use of the scalping-knife which each man wore in the belt of his hunting-shirt. During the meal the greatest hilarity prevailed. The younger part of the company attempted to steal the bride's shoe. The four groomsman were obliged to guard her, and he who failed to do so was obliged to pay a forfeit for the redemption of the shoe, and the bride was not permitted to dance until it was restored. Next

came the ceremony of throwing the stocking. A stocking was rolled in a ball and given to each of the young ladies in turn, who, standing with her back to the bride, threw it over her shoulder, and the first who succeeded in striking the bride's head was the next to be married. The young men then went through the same ceremony, only throwing it at the groom's head. The dancing, which was kept up often through the whole night, consisted of jigs, reels, and square dances. If any of the company, through weariness, attempted to conceal himself for the purpose of sleeping, the luckless wight was dragged out upon the floor, and the fiddler ordered to play "Hang out till morning." These festivities were sometimes kept up for a week or more, until the revellers, perfectly exhausted, had to rest several days before they were fit for work.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. Who succeeded Governor Spotswood?
3. What relations existed between Virginia and her sister colonies?
4. What dispute arose between Virginia and North Carolina?
5. Who was then governor of Virginia?
6. How was the dispute settled?
7. Who was Colonel Byrd?
8. What two cities did he found?
9. Give an account of the settlements in the lower Valley.
10. What settlements were made by Mackey, Lewis, and Salling?
11. Tell of Burden's visit to Lewis.
12. What present did he make to the governor, and how was he rewarded?
13. To what trick did he resort, and with what success?
14. What portion of the Valley did his grant cover?
15. What was the character of the settlers upon it?
16. What of the Indian tribes in the Valley of Virginia?
17. Did they molest the early settlers?
18. Tell the manner in which a marriage was conducted among the early settlers.
19. Describe the feast?

CHAPTER XVII.

1732-1755.

BIRTH OF GEORGE WASHINGTON—INCIDENTS OF HIS EARLY LIFE—
UNSUCCESSFUL MISSION TO THE FRENCH—WAR WITH THE
FRENCH BEGUN.

Birth of Washington.—On the 22d of February, 1732, in the County of Westmoreland, was born George Washington, the first President of the United States, and the

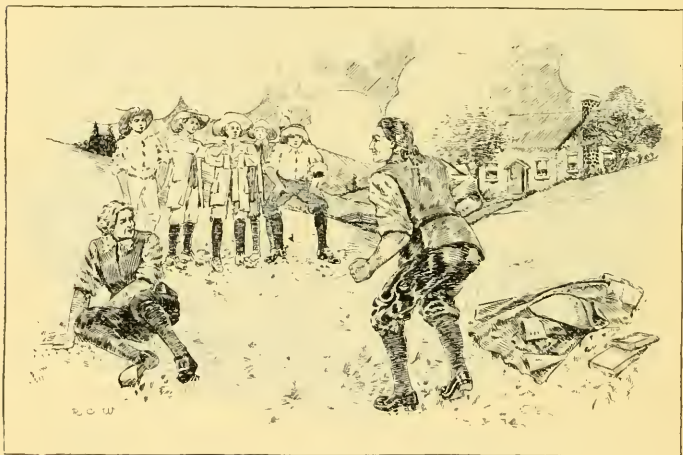


BIRTHPLACE OF GEORGE WASHINGTON.

most famous of all Virginians. He was the son of Augustine Washington and Mary Ball. When he was about five years old, his father removed to Stafford County; and upon the banks of the Rappahannock, nearly

opposite Fredericksburg, the childhood of George Washington was passed.

He received only a plain English education, his first schoolmaster being an old sexton named Hobby, who lived to see the renown of his pupil, and used to boast that the foundation of George Washington's greatness was laid between his knees. But it is far more likely that the wise counsels and good example of his father had more to do with the formation of the character of the future patriot than the A B C teachings of old Hobby. "Truth, George," said his good father to him one day, "is the loveliest quality of youth. I would ride fifty miles, my son, to see the little boy whose heart was so honest, and his lips so pure, that I could depend on every word he says."



ONE OF WASHINGTON'S EARLY VICTORIES.

His School-Life.—Young Washington seems to have taken a position among his companions at an early age, as one whose word could be depended upon. His father died

when he was ten years old, but he never lost the impression made upon him by his teachings; on the contrary, they seemed to grow with his growth and strengthen with his strength. He went to school in Westmoreland County, to a Mr. Williams; and here he was distinguished for his skill in such athletic sports as running, jumping, and wrestling, but he showed great disdain for tame games like tops and marbles.

Mimic Warfare.—It is said that, when he was only in his eleventh year, he gave evidence of military talent. He used to divide his school-fellows into two parties, one of which he called French and the other American. The French were commanded by a big boy named William Bustle; George himself commanded the Americans. Every day, at recess, the little armies would seize their corn-stalk muskets and calabash drums, and turn out to fight their mimic battles with great fury. At the age of sixteen he left school and obtained a situation as surveyor for Lord Fairfax, who owned all the land in what is called the Northern Neck of Virginia, lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers, and from the Chesapeake Bay back to the Alleghany Mountains. This tract was first granted to Lord Culpeper, former Governor of Virginia, and inherited by Lord Fairfax, his nephew.

Recently the United States Government made a re-survey of the old Lord Fairfax grants, and found that there was no noticeable error in the survey made by this lad of sixteen.

Washington was a surveyor until his twentieth year. He worked hard as a woodsman, and spent his leisure hours in athletic sports with his young companions, the Stevenses and Crawfords. Thus his body was well trained, and his heart seems to have been equally disciplined, for he always retained the tenderest feelings towards the com-

panions of his youth. It is said that he received an appointment on a British man-of-war, and his trunk was actually on board; but when he came to take leave of his weeping mother, who told him her heart was breaking, he declined the appointment and stayed at home to gratify her.

From this time he seems to have imbibed a passion for military life, and spent his leisure time in practising military tactics. He attracted so much attention by the skill he manifested in all military arts, that when he left the service of Lord Fairfax he was appointed adjutant-general of the Virginia forces on the Northern Neck, who were training for service against the Indians. Here his history becomes involved with events of national importance.

The French and English.—When the first colonists came to this continent, England claimed, by right of discovery, the entire country stretching in length from Canada to the southern border of North Carolina, and in breadth from the Atlantic to the Pacific. This comprises a great extent of territory cut in two by the Mississippi River. It is true that England had no idea of the immense territory she was claiming; nevertheless her title to it all was considered perfect.

The French, with their possessions in Canada as a stronghold, were disputing this title vigorously. About seventy years after Captain Smith had planted his colony in Virginia, one of the French Jesuit missionaries went down the Wisconsin River in an open boat, entered the Mississippi, sailed past the mouth of the Ohio and Missouri rivers, and, in the name of his sovereign, claimed the whole country watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries. He did not know and did not care that the English had a prior claim.

Nine years after the expedition of the Jesuit missionary, another Frenchman, named La Salle, descended the Mississippi River to its mouth, and named the surrounding country Louisiana after his sovereign, Louis the Fourteenth. The possession of Louisiana was never disputed by the English, as it was not within the boundaries of their claim. After the English settlements had been pushed back towards the Mississippi, it became a contested matter, whether the English or the French should own the magnificent country watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries. Many years before this time, Governor Spotswood had advised the English government to send companies to explore this splendid country, to make English settlements, and to build forts along the Ohio River for their protection. Had he been listened to a bloody war might have been averted; but he was not, and the colony of Virginia had now to suffer the consequences of this disregard of his advice.

French Treaties with the Indians.—The Indians with whom the American colonists came into contact were divided into many tribes, but all belonged to about three families, and these families in time of trouble united their strength. The Algonquins, in Canada, had for their confederates the New England tribes, the Susquehannas in the south, and some tribes in the west; then there were the Creeks and Cherokees, belonging to the Mobilians in the south; but the most powerful of all the three were the Iroquois, who comprised the famous Five Nations, already mentioned in a previous chapter. These formed a powerful confederacy which held sway over the others; the Algonquins paid tribute to them for many years. The French, however, formed an alliance with the Algonquins and helped them to rebel against the Iroquois, and

thus gained their bitter enmity. The continual warfare between these powerful tribes prevented the rapid advance of the French upon the English possessions, and secured to us final conquest. Information reached Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, that the French had made treaties with all the western tribes of Indians, and were building forts on the Ohio River, which they intended to claim. Governor Dinwiddie, after having tried other means, determined to send a message to the commander on the Ohio to remonstrate against his encroachment, and to warn him to withdraw his forces. But a difficulty arose as to who should be the bearer of this message through trackless forests, where the silence of nature had never been broken save by the Indian's war-whoop and the roar of wild beasts, and where danger known and unknown must beset every step.

Washington's Perilous Journey.—Dinwiddie did not have long to wait for a messenger. Young George Washington, hearing of the difficulty, at once presented himself to the governor and tendered his services, which were gladly accepted. The next day, the 31st of October, 1753, he left Williamsburg, passed through Fredericksburg up the Potomac to Alexandria, thence to Winchester, and from there to the point on the Potomac where the city of Cumberland now stands. Beyond this there was no European settlement.

The prospects before him would have daunted any heart less brave than his own, but Washington did not linger long enough to think of the dangers of the way. The firmness which his early education had imparted to his character now displayed itself. At the head of his little party he slowly and cautiously made his way over the snow-crowned Alleghanies. How the journey was

accomplished has ever since been a wonder to all. In the middle of winter, through difficulties of which language can convey no idea, our young hero and his companions pushed on. They crossed the large rivers on rafts, and had to fell trees across the rapid mountain torrents. At length they reached the point where the Monongahela and Alleghany River unite to form the Ohio. It was a beautiful country, and the keen eye of Washington at once fixed upon it as a most important position for a fort. Twenty miles farther on he again paused, and collecting as many of the Indian braves as he could, made them a speech, in which he told them the object of his mission and asked their assistance. He was answered by a young Indian king, from whom he learned that his people were not unwilling to assist in putting a stop to the progress of the French, whose movements they were beginning to view with apprehension and jealousy.

After having rested a few days, Washington again set out on his journey for the headquarters of the French, which were about one hundred and twenty miles from the Ohio River. The young Indian king and three of his men accompanied him. By perseverance they at length reached the place, and were courteously received by the French commander, St. Pierre. Washington presented Governor Dinwiddie's letter; St. Pierre, in reply, said that the matter must be decided by the Governor of Canada; his duty was simply to obey orders, which obliged him to maintain his present position. With this unsatisfactory answer, Washington was forced to return. He reached Williamsburg about the middle of January, after an absence of only two months and a half, and delivered his message to Governor Dinwiddie. It was decisive; war between the English and French was at once declared.

The service of the young officer in this expedition was highly appreciated. Going into the House of Burgesses one day, he took his seat in the gallery just in time to hear Speaker Robertson say, "Gentlemen, it is proposed that the



WASHINGTON RECEIVING THE THANKS OF THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

thanks of this House be given to Major Washington, who now sits in the gallery, for the very gallant manner in which he has executed the important trust lately imposed on him by his Excellency Governor Dinwiddie." In a mo-

ment the House rose as one man, and turning towards the blushing young officer, saluted him. He tried to reply, but so completely confounded was this young hero, who had not feared to encounter the dangers of the American forest, that he stood blushing like a girl as this the first leaf in his crown of laurel was placed on his head. At last he was able to articulate faintly, "Mr. Speaker—Mr. Speaker!" and then was silent. Old Speaker Robertson called out to him, laughingly, "Major Washington—Major Washington, sit down, your modesty alone is equal to your merit."

Washington's First Command.—As soon as the news of the unsuccessful mission of Washington to the French reached England, orders were issued by the British Ministry for the colonists to arm and unite in repelling the aggressions of the French. Virginia raised two companies of one hundred men each, and placed them under the command of Washington. In obedience to orders, he marched early in April towards the fork of the Ohio, to complete the erection of the fort begun there some time before. Before they had reached there, however, they heard that the fort had been surrendered to the French, with a quantity of valuable property and a large body of men. This was the first open act of hostility on the part of the French.

His Success.—Upon hearing this news, Washington moved slowly forward, intending to be guided in his course by the course of events. He had many difficulties to encounter, with the Indians particularly. At one time, as he was making his way down the mountain, his Indian guides refused to go any farther without reward, and he was obliged to promise them his coat and his ruffled shirt at the end of the journey. At length the opportunity to meet the enemy, for which he had so ardently longed,

presented itself, as his Indian scouts reported quite a large body of French approaching with apparently hostile intentions. Guided by the friendly Indians, Washington marched under cover of a very dark night in the direction of the valley in which the enemy were encamped, and before morning dawn had completely surrounded the French commander. There was a rush to arms, but it was too late, and the whole party was forced to surrender, but not until they had lost their commander and ten men. This was the first blood shed in the war between the French and English.*

QUESTIONS.

1. When and where was George Washington born?
2. Relate the circumstances of his early life.
3. What was the real foundation of his honest character?
4. Relate the story of his school-days.
5. What place did he fill when he left school?
6. Where is the Northern Neck of Virginia, and to whom was it granted?
7. How long did he act as surveyor to Lord Fairfax?
8. What proof of filial love did he give?
9. What situation did he next receive?
10. Point out on your map the territory claimed by England.
11. What great river cuts this in two and waters it?
12. Where were the French possessions?
13. What circumstances led them to claim this country?
14. Of what portion of the country did La Salle take possession, and what did he name it?
15. What difficulties arose out of these French claims?
16. What advice had Governor Spottswood once given upon this subject?
17. What news reached Governor Dinwiddie?
18. What step did he determine upon?
19. Who was chosen as messenger?
20. What course did Washington pursue?
21. Relate the circumstances of his journey.

*I would advise teachers to make the pupils study these lessons with the aid of maps, as it is important that they should have a proper idea of these localities.

22. Tell of his interview with the friendly Indians.
 23. Next his interview with the French officer.
 24. Of his return home.
 25. Of his appearance in the House of Burgesses.
 26. How was the news of French aggressions received in England?
 27. What position was given to Washington?
 28. To what point did he direct his course?
 29. What condition of things did he find?
 30. What course did he pursue next?
 31. Tell of his first battle with the French.
-

CHAPTER XVIII.

1755.—CONTINUED.

BATTLE OF FORT DUQUESNE—BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT AND DEATH.

Fort Necessity.—After this battle, the command of the Virginia forces, by the sudden death of Colonel Fry, devolved upon Washington. He was reinforced at a place called the “Meadows” by two companies, one from New York and one from South Carolina. At the Meadows he erected a small fort which he called Fort Necessity. He then marched, at the head of nearly four hundred men, towards Fort Duquesne (*-kane*). After having gone thirteen miles in this direction, he was met by some friendly Indians, who told him the troops in Fort Duquesne were as numerous as the pigeons in the woods. A council of war was held, and it was reluctantly determined to return to Fort Necessity. Here Washington strained every nerve to complete the fort, as he had no doubt that the French, trusting to their superiority of numbers, would make a descent upon him.

Washington's Defence.—The result showed the foresight of the young officer, for before his preparations were

complete, fifteen hundred French and Indians came bearing down upon Fort Necessity. They were commanded by Monsieur de Villiers, who, confident in his superior numbers, expected to secure an easy prey. Surrounding the small fort, they commenced a furious fire from all points at once: but now the wisdom of Washington in the choice of its position was shown. It was erected in the middle of level ground, with nothing to obstruct the eye for a long distance on any side. The French shots were thrown away on account of the distance, and as they ventured nearer they were picked out and shot down by the keen American marksmen. All day long the fight continued, Washington animating his troops by exhortations and personal example. He had early taken a position on the outside of the fort, where the men fought from morning until evening in the ditch and up to their knees in mud and water. De Villiers was astonished; he was not prepared for so earnest a resistance from these untutored Americans. After hours of contest he had made no impression on the fort, and had lost two hundred of his men killed and disabled.

The Capitulation.—Knowing that it was impossible for the little garrison to escape, and that it could be reduced by famine, he sent a message to Washington proposing terms of capitulation, too humiliating to be thought of for an instant. The young officer, therefore, returned for answer that he and his companions would sacrifice their lives one by one in the ditch where they had fought rather than submit to dishonor. The haughty Frenchman now began to understand what sort of man he had to deal with, and during the night sent another message. He proposed that the Americans should be permitted to retire from the fort with their arms and baggage, and to march without molestation into the inhabited parts of Virginia,

and that the French should retire to Fort Duquesne. These terms were accepted; but Washington had scarcely begun his march before he discovered that the terms he had accepted were not honorably observed, for the Indians in the employ of the French hovered about his little army continually, committing the most wanton outrages and barbarous cruelties. His men dared not close their eyes for fear of the terrible war-whoop and the scalping knife. At length, with diminished numbers, and spent with fatigue and hunger, the little army arrived at Winchester. The House of Burgesses returned a vote of thanks to the officers and men engaged in this expedition, and gave about nine hundred dollars to be divided among them.

Plans for other Campaigns.—Governor Dinwiddie immediately formed a plan for another campaign, and sent orders to Washington to retrace his steps across the Alleghanies, to defeat the French and Indians and to capture Fort Duquesne. Nothing could exceed Washington's astonishment at these orders. He knew that it was madness, with his exhausted army, to attempt to march through the wilderness in the midst of winter and without supplies, in order to accomplish the defeat of a daring foe, who had double his number besides being entrenched in a fortification. In his dilemma the Virginia Assembly came to his relief, and refused to vote the money required to carry out Governor Dinwiddie's plan of campaign.

During the next winter the English government sent Governor Dinwiddie ten thousand pounds for carrying on the war, but it was accompanied by orders that threw everything into confusion. The whole army in Virginia was to be divided into companies, and no officer was to have a higher grade than that of Captain. Hence, Washington, who had fairly won his position as colonel of a

Virginia regiment, was degraded to the rank of captain, with English officers, who had seen no service, outranking him. As his high spirit refused to brook such injustice, he resigned his position in the army and retired to private life.

Washington's next service.—He was not permitted to remain long in retirement. Early in the spring of 1755 Major-General Braddock arrived with a sufficient body of troops to carry on the war with vigor. Hearing of the merits of the young Virginia officer, and, knowing how important would be his knowledge of the country in the approaching campaign, he sent for him and entreated him to accept the position as aide upon his staff, with the rank of colonel. Washington was only too glad to accept this offer, as it had been a severe trial to him to lay down his arms which had been raised in defence of his country.

Braddock's Campaign.—General Braddock, a brave and experienced officer, had won many laurels upon the battle-fields of Europe, but he knew nothing of fighting in America. He expected to march his men through the thick forests in heavy column as he had done over the plains of Europe. To do this he had to cut down trees, level obstructions, and bridge every brook. The progress of his troops was, therefore, very slow; they were nearly one month going eighty miles from Cumberland towards Fort Duquesne. Unfortunately, Washington was taken sick and obliged to stay behind, so that General Braddock lost the benefit of his advice. It is doubtful, though, whether he would have availed himself of it had Washington been with him, for he was a haughty, imperious man, unwilling to accept counsel from an inferior officer.

At length they arrived at the Monongahela, and here Colonel Washington, weak from illness, joined them;

but the ardor of his spirit and the urgency of the situation forced him to enter upon the duties of his position without delay. On the morning of the 9th of July, General Braddock made preparations for crossing the Monongahela. Washington in later days often spoke of the beauty of the scene. The British troops, perfectly disciplined and in full uniform, marched through the forest with the regular step of the parade-ground. Braddock had retained but three Virginia companies, and those probably out of compliment to Washington: the others were left in the rear.

The Ambush.—They were now within seven miles of Fort Duquesne and Washington saw, with the deepest anxiety, the incautious rapidity with which General Braddock advanced. In vain he warned him of the dangers of ambush, and entreated that he might lead the way with the Virginia Rangers and search the country well before the advance of the whole army. Rejecting his advice, the haughty commander gave him to understand that he was presuming upon his position. Washington retired with flushed cheeks, feeling very sad as his eyes glanced over the splendid army, for he knew that many of the brave fellows before him, so confident of victory, would that day bite the dust. The result was worse even than his anticipations. Just before the crossing of the river, as they were descending the slope from its banks, a heavy fire was opened upon the front and left from an unseen foe. The van of the army, startled by this fire, fell back. A panic commenced: and now the fire opened upon them from every side, though not a foe was to be seen.

The Defeat.—General Braddock was a brave man, and did his utmost to rally his troops; but again his ignorance of American warfare misled him. Instead of ordering his men to charge into the trees and brushwood, and thus to

dislodge the hidden enemy, he formed them in solid columns, as he had been accustomed to do upon open battle-fields. This was playing into the enemy's hands, as the French and Indian sharpshooters poured continuous volleys



BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.

upon these masses; and no exhortations, no examples of individual bravery, could stay the panic that ensued. Crowded together like sheep in a slaughter-pen, the British added to the bloodshed of their own men by random firing. Their unfortunate general did all that man could

do to restore order. Riding from place to place he tried to rally his men, but all in vain. Five horses were killed under him, and two of his aides were shot down by his side. Nearly half of his army was either killed or wounded, and the ground was literally strewn with the dead. The Indians picked out the officers by their brilliant uniforms.

The Virginia troops, in this terrible havoc, behaved with the greatest bravery. Unlike the British, they made no attempt to keep in close order, but scattered themselves in the woods, and fought from behind the trees. To speak in the language of the time, they fought like men and died like soldiers; but their bravery did not save them from destruction. When the battle ended, but thirty remained alive out of the three hundred that had gone into it. Out of one company of twenty-nine, twenty-five were killed; of another, only one private survived.

A Charmed Life.—Colonel Washington distinguished himself by his coolness and resolution. After the death of the general's aides, the whole duty of carrying his orders to different parts of the field devolved upon the Virginia Colonel. This duty he performed in the midst of an incessant fire. It is said that an Indian chief marked him as he rode to and fro through the field, and, taking deliberate aim, fired; but the intendent victim rode on unharmed. The fire was repeated with a like result; then, calling his men around him the chief pointed out the brave young officer whose life he sought, bidding them direct their fire upon him. Still the young hero passed on unharmed, until the superstitious Indians desisted, believing that he bore a charmed life. He had two horses shot under him, and four bullets passed through his clothes, but not a hair of his head was hurt. Further, by his

coolness and activity, he saved the remains of the army. Unfortunately General Braddock was not thus protected. He received a ball through his lungs, and was borne from the field by Washington and another of his officers. After this the rout became general. Everything was deserted; the artillery, baggage, and colors were all abandoned, and this probably saved the remnant of the army, for the Indians stopped the pursuit to revel in the plunder.

Braddock's Grave.—Fortunately, a portion of Braddock's army had been left some distance in the rear, under Colonel Dunbar. To join these the fragments of the defeated forces bent their way, bearing their dying general. He died on the way, within sound of the savage war-whoops of the pursuers. They buried him in the road, and drove their wagons back and forth over the spot to obliterate the marks. The spot remained unidentified until a few years ago, when a skeleton was found and identified as that of General Braddock by the English military buttons found with it. It was removed to a field nearby, and buried beneath an oak tree, upon which is recorded the fact. October, 1913, the British and Canadians erected a suitable monument to mark the spot. It is said that in his dying moments Braddock confessed frankly to Washington that he had erred in not taking his advice upon that fatal morning.

After Braddock's death the entire army retreated to Winchester; nor did Dunbar, who succeeded to the command, consider himself safe even there, for he announced his intention of taking up winter-quarters in Philadelphia in the middle of summer. Washington sent a message to Governor Dinwiddie, to inform him of the defeat and death of General Braddock and of Dunbar's departure to Philadelphia. The whole frontier was open to the

enemy. Nothing could exceed the dismay of the people of Virginia at the reception of this news. A meeting of the Burgesses was immediately called; a sum of money was voted to Washington and his surviving officers, as a token of approval of the part they had borne in the unfortunate campaign. Their confidence in Washington was also shown by bestowing upon him the command of a regiment which was to proceed at once to the protection of the border.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what year did these events occur?
2. What promotion was conferred upon Washington after the battle?
3. What fort did he erect?
4. What prevented his marching against Fort Duquesne?
5. What was Washington's next step?
6. Tell of the attack on Fort Necessity.
7. Of the close of the affair.
8. Of Washington's retreat to Winchester.
9. How did the House of Burgesses acknowledge his services?
10. What plan of campaign did the governor form?
11. What prevented its execution?
12. What did the English government do next?
13. What course did Washington take?
14. What induced him again to take up arms?
15. What of General Braddock, and his idea of fighting in America?
16. Tell of his march.
17. Where was Washington?
18. What happened on the 9th of July?
19. Relate the order of the advance.
20. What remonstrance did Washington make, and with what effect?
21. Relate the story of the fight.
22. Tell of the panic.
23. What course did the Indians take?
24. What of the behavior and loss among the Virginia troops?
25. How was Washington wonderfully protected?
26. Tell of Braddock's death.
27. What became of the rest of the army?
28. What remarkable course did Dunbar take?
29. What did the House of Burgesses do?

CHAPTER XIX.

1756-1763.

INDIAN ATROCITIES—FALL OF FORT DUQUESNE—WASHINGTON RETIRES TO MOUNT VERNON.

After the Defeat.—The prompt measures thus taken were not premature, for, before Washington could return to Winchester, news was received that the Indians, encouraged by the defeat at Fort Duquesne, had gathered in great numbers, and were already spreading devastation throughout the whole country. Had the government furnished him with men and means sufficient to take Fort Duquesne at once, the heart-rending details of savage butcheries upon the frontier might never have been told. The whole country was terror-stricken at the fate of Braddock's army, and no representations of Washington could induce the authorities to order another advance. Thus the French were enabled to concentrate their forces at this most important place. This civilized nation also used every means in its power to set the murderous savage with his tomahawk and scalping-knife upon the defenceless inhabitants of the frontier of Virginia.

Washington builds Forts.—Washington did all he could in its defence, but this was little; for how could sixteen hundred men guard a frontier of three hundred and sixty miles? He built a fort at Winchester, which he named in honor of Lord Londoun, who was now in command of the British forces in America. Twenty-three smaller forts were also erected along the mountain ranges. Among these he divided his forces, and to these places of refuge men, women, and children would fly for safety when

the war-whoop of the savage awakened the echoes of the forests.

Indian Outrages.—The history of the following three years is written in blood, and the heart of the brave commander of the Virginia forces sickened at the sights which daily met his eye, and which he was powerless to avert. Steadily he pursued his course, going from fort to fort. At one place he found a man lying in the furrow beside his plow, with his story written in his forehead by the terrible tomahawk. At a short distance stood the ruins of his cottage, with the bones of his wife and children bleaching in the ashes. Many other instances of Indian savagery might be given.

Fort Duquesne taken.—During all this time Washington continued to advocate the attack upon Fort Duquesne, but all in vain, until Lord Fauquier was appointed governor in Dinwiddie's place. The new governor at once saw the wisdom of this movement, and an army was raised, which, after many dangers and delays, reached Fort Duquesne to find it deserted, so that this important position fell into the hands of the Virginians without a blow. It was now their duty to bury the remains of those who were slain in Braddock's defeat. Disfigured, mutilated by wounds, torn by birds and beasts of prey, they presented a horrible spectacle, and many a brave soldier dropped a tear as he walked silently and solemnly through this army of the dead.

Distressing Scenes.—It is related that one Major Halket had lost a father and a brother in this battle. An Indian guide told him of an old officer whom he had seen fall, and of a young man who in stooping to help him fell across the body, and he pointed out the two skeletons as they lay. Quivering with emotion, the strong man

stood by the side of the bones; stopping an instant to think, he recalled some peculiarities connected with his father, and as he raised the skeleton and perceived the mark for which he sought, he exclaimed "It is my father!" and fell back in the arms of his companion. This is but one touching instance among many. There were some there who had escaped the slaughter of that terrible day, and told of its horrors with all the eloquence of eye-witnesses. At length, with pious care they gathered together the sacred dust and buried it in one grave. Having performed this duty, they made a treaty with the Indians, and having taken proper steps for the protection of the frontier, General Forbes returned with his army to Philadelphia.

The fall of Fort Duquesne put an end to the war between the French and English upon the frontiers of Virginia, and Washington, after five years of active service, was not sorry to lay down his sword and return to Mount Vernon. It is a remarkable fact that Washington, though often unsuccessful, never lost the confidence of his countrymen. No one blamed him for Braddock's defeat; on the contrary, his reputation rose upon that battle-field. Ministers in the pulpit thanked God for preserving the life of the young hero, and the Burgesses presented him with a token of their confidence in him.

Prosperity of Virginia.—For some years after this Virginia grew in strength and prosperity. Her population increased rapidly, and she was unconsciously preparing for the great struggle in which she was to take the lead. She had now passed her infancy, her childhood, and even her youth, and she was slowly learning the high duties to which she was to be called, and in whose faithful performance she won for herself a name of which her sons to the latest generation will be proud.

Taxation without Representation. — England, in the meantime, had been involved in so many wars that she was deeply in debt, and began to think seriously of forcing her prosperous colonies in America to assist her in paying these dues. This she had no right to do. Her House of Commons is made up of men elected by the people to represent their interests, and the people are then taxed to pay the expenses of the government. This great assembly, selected from the most intelligent men in the country, meet together and consult about the good of the whole. After the wants and wishes of all are made known, they then decide how the sum of money they have in hand, and to which all have contributed, can be best used to meet these necessities. Hence, there can be no just taxation without due representation. Therefore, as America was not allowed to send any men to the Parliament of England to represent her interests, she very properly thought that England had no right to tax her, particularly as each colony had its own government to support. Taxation without representation was the chief cause of the American Revolution.

QUESTIONS.

1. What years are included in this chapter?
2. What happened before Washington returned to Winchester?
3. What was the cause of these misfortunes, and how might they have been averted?
4. What steps did Washington take?
5. What of the following three years?
6. What course did Washington advocate, and with what success?
7. Give an account of the return to the scene of Braddock's defeat, and the burial of the dead.
8. What put an end to the war between the French and English?
9. What is a noticeable fact in Washington's career?
10. What progress did Virginia make after these events?
11. What was the condition of the British government, and how did she propose to relieve herself of her difficulties?
12. Explain why England had no right to tax America.

CHAPTER XX.

1765-1770.

PATRICK HENRY—RICHARD HENRY LEE—RICHARD BLAND AND EDMUND PENDLETON—THE STAMP ACT RESISTED—THOMAS JEFFERSON.

Loyalty of Virginia.—During the disputes between England and America, Virginia was in sore difficulties, for she was more devoted to the mother country than any other colony. She had been the last to desert King Charles I., and the first to welcome King Charles II. to the throne. But there was something that Virginia loved more, even, than she did her king, and this was justice and freedom. These she found endangered by the proposition to tax her to enable England to pay a heavy debt.

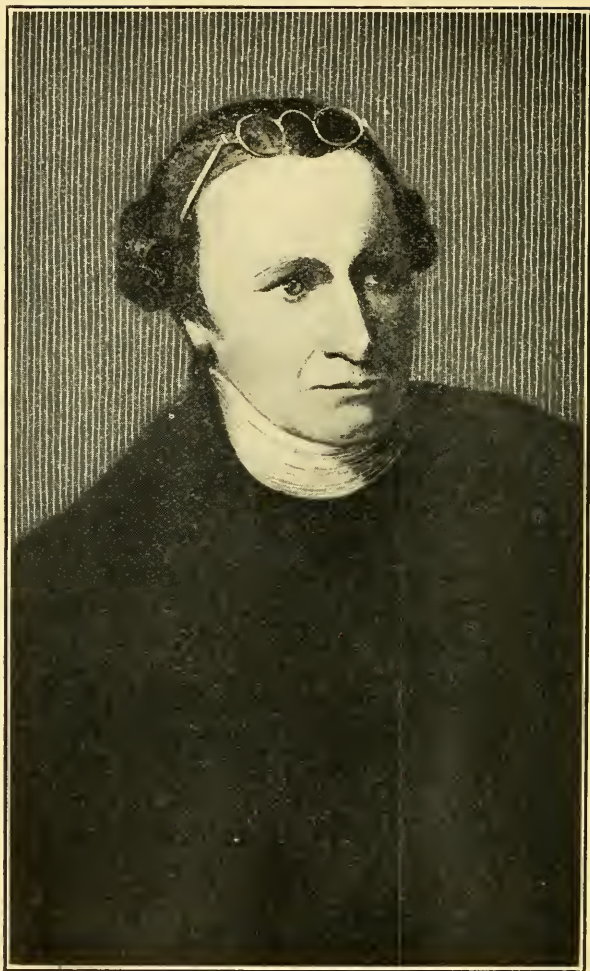
The Navigation Laws.—I have told you about the navigation laws which forbade America to trade with any country but England. When the colonies were too feeble to think of resistance, they had been forced to pay a tax upon all articles brought from England to America. This was wrong, but Virginia had become accustomed to these laws. However, when her submission in this matter encouraged her English rulers to put still greater burdens upon her, she became alarmed, and looked around anxiously to see which of her sons would give voice to her indignation: nor did she look in vain.

Patrick Henry.—A young lawyer from the county of Hanover, with neither birth, wealth, nor connections to recommend him, came forward. This was Patrick Henry, whose name, as an orator, will go down side by side with

that of Demosthenes; and there is no person in history the study of whose character should give more encouragement to the young. He had not even enjoyed the advantage of a first-rate education; he was awkward and ungainly in appearance, and his natural indolence made success doubly difficult; but with all this he had a thirst for knowledge which was unconquerable. History was his favorite study, particularly that of Virginia. With this he made himself perfectly familiar, from the time that James I. had given the charter to the London Company down to the present. Thus fortified by a knowledge of her past, he was ready to help his native State when she needed his aid.

The Stamp Act.—The question of the right of England to tax her colonies was discussed in the Assembly of Virginia. There were many eloquent men in this body, but it was a serious matter to oppose England. It was not only the love of a child for a mother which made Virginia pause to think, but the knowledge that the opposition to the mother country would produce a struggle from which the boldest shrank, and which many thought had better be avoided, even by allowing the right of England to tax the colony. Fortunately, this was not the opinion of all. The colonies now resembled a smouldering fire which only required a strong breath to kindle into a flame. This breath was supplied by the news which reached Virginia that the Parliament of England had passed a law known as the "Stamp Act."

A Modern Parallel.—In these days it is not difficult to understand what this was. Not many years ago almost every article purchased from a store in this country had a stamp upon it. Many business papers and instruments of writing were not worth anything unless they had a



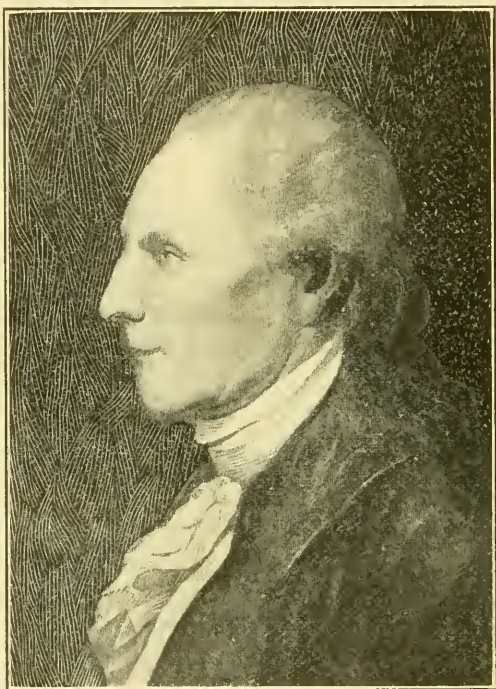
PATRICK HENRY.

stamp upon them. Now, these stamps were a tax which the government levied upon the articles. The United States issued these stamps, and sold them to the people; the money thus obtained was put into the Treasury, and provided a fund for the payment of the debt of the country. Every American was interested in having the debts of the country paid, and no one felt sensibly the few cents which these stamps cost. But when England, in 1765, made it a law that America should buy her stamps and use them, the colonists determined to resist.

Indignation in the Colonies.—The Virginians were a proud race, and very jealous of any attack upon their liberties. It was not the money that they cared for, but it was the principle involved in the matter. They would willingly have voted a large sum to assist England in paying her debts, but they knew that this small tax was but the first link in the chain which was to bind them as slaves to the mother-country. Admit her right to levy this upon them, and it would be followed by a larger and a larger tax until the burden would become intolerable. Nor was Virginia alone in this opinion; the voice of indignation arose from all the colonies. When the Stamp Act was issued in Boston, it was seized, torn in pieces, and trampled underfoot. The Virginia lawyers declared that they would rather give up their profession than use the stamps; and when the English agent arrived to distribute them, he was so rudely treated that he was obliged to seek safety in flight. These are the circumstances which prepared the way for the great orator, Patrick Henry.

The Virginia Assembly.—In the Virginia Assembly, which met to discuss the Stamp Act, there were many notable men. There was Richard Henry Lee, called the Cicero of Virginia, because of his great reputation as an

orator, and because he looked like a noble Roman. Next came Peyton Randolph, attorney general, who was no orator, but a man of much learning and influence. Then there was Richard Bland, a wise statesman but a better



RICHARD HENRY LEE.

writer than speaker. Still another was Edmund Pendleton, who had been left an orphan, poor and uneducated, and who, after having ploughed all day, pursued his studies at night, working hard, and spending in books all that he could spare from his earnings. He had no skill as a

writer, but spoke with great power. George Mason was, according to Mr. Madison, the ablest debater in this Assembly. He was fifty years old when he wrote the famous Bill of Rights for Virginia and also the Constitution for the government of the State. These papers will always secure to him a foremost place among the distinguished men of Virginia. Such were the sons whom Virginia called around her in her time of trouble.

A Great American Patriot.—But the greatest of them all was Patrick Henry. He was twenty-eight years old when he became a member of the House of Burgesses. He had not been elected to the House, but obtained a seat because one of the members resigned his place to him, in order that he might speak upon this great subject.

He found the House divided into two parties; one advocating submission in the matter of the Stamp Act, and the other opposed to it. Finding that the party for submission was about to pass the Stamp Act, he took out his pencil and wrote upon a leaf of an old book some resolutions which he presented to the House. They set forth the facts that Virginians had a right to all the privileges of English subjects; that having no representatives in Parliament, they should not be taxed by Parliament; that the right of these colonies to tax themselves had always been recognized by the kings and Parliaments of England; and lastly, that no one had a right to tax Virginians but the General Assembly of Virginia, and were such a thing allowed it would destroy American freedom.

Patrick Henry's Great Oration.—These were the boldest words that had ever been uttered in that place, and the bravest hearts shrunk from the results which might follow from them. A stormy discussion took place, in the midst of which Patrick Henry rose. The party opposing him laughed almost without reserve at his appear-

ance. He was plainly, even coarsely, dressed, awkward in his figure and manner, and formed a striking contrast to the fashionable gallants, with their powdered hair and ruffled shirt-fronts, who filled the House. Their amusement did not last long, for soon a great change came over the speaker. His eye kindled as he warmed with his subject, his form became erect, and even graceful, and his voice thrilled like music as he spoke, as no Virginian had ever dared do before, of the wrongs of the colony and the dangers which lay before her. Not a sound broke the stillness: every eye was turned upon him as he painted



PATRICK HENRY BEFORE THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

Virginia in chains to the power of England. The blood ran cold in their veins as they listened. It seems a pity that this wonderful speech was not preserved; no one thought of writing it out as he uttered it, and only a portion of it has come down to us. "Caesar," he cried, "had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—" Here he was interrupted by loud cries of "Treason! trea-

son!" He knew that he stood upon the brink of a precipice; Virginia was not yet able to bear the daring words he would have uttered. He did not lose his self-command, but straightening himself up, he continued, "and George III. may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

The effect of this speech is best known by its result—the resolutions passed by a majority of one. At the door of the House, listening with delight to this fine outburst of oratory, stood a student of William and Mary College, Thomas Jefferson, who afterwards wrote the Declaration of Independence. The news of the adoption of Henry's resolutions spread like wildfire, and caused intense excitement throughout the whole country. The other colonies adopted similar resolutions, and determined that nothing bearing the stamp of England should come into the country. Clubs were formed named "The Sons of Liberty," and the members bound themselves by an oath to resist oppression. Massachusetts proposed that all the colonies should send delegates to New York in October to consult about the best means to be adopted in this crisis. It was the first American Congress. The colonies heretofore had had separate governments, and this was the first time they had really united for a common defence.

On the 1st of November, the day fixed upon for the Stamp Act to take effect, signs of indignation and murmuring were visible everywhere. In Boston a funeral, which they called the Funeral of Liberty, took place; muffled drums beat dead marches, the bells were tolled, and long processions of black-robed mourners passed through the streets following a coffin, which they solemnly interred.

Repeal of the Stamp Act.—When the news of this opposition reached England there was great excitement in

Parliament. Many members thought America was perfectly right in her course, and one of them, William Pitt, rose from a sick-bed to make a speech in behalf of the Americans. "We are told," said he, "that America is obstinate, America is in open rebellion. I rejoice that America has resisted oppression; three millions of people so dead to all feelings of liberty as voluntarily to submit to be slaves would have been fit instruments to make slaves of all the rest." The result of American firmness was, that England repealed the act, and the Americans, strengthened by this triumph, determined that they would never again submit to a wrong from England.

Governor Botetourt.—For some time after this, affairs went on quietly in Virginia. Governor Fauquier died, and was succeeded by Norborne Berkeley, Baron of Botetourt, who was chosen as Governor of Virginia because it was supposed that he would check rebellion and see the king's commands enforced. He was a good and a great man, loved his new people, and was continually perplexed by the desire to obey his king and yet do justice to those over whom he ruled.

Notwithstanding all the trouble about the Stamp Act, England still debated how she could make the colonies help to pay her debts. Virginia had also another complaint to make. There had for many years existed a law that when a person was accused of crime in Virginia, he should be sent all the way over to England to be tried. The year after Lord Botetourt was appointed Governor of Virginia, the General Assembly passed two resolutions: first, that Virginia would no longer submit to be taxed by England, nor would she send criminals to England to be tried.

The Assembly dissolved.—Now, although the governor knew perfectly well that the Assembly was right in this, yet he thought that his duty to the king compelled him to take notice of what seemed rebellion against his sovereign's authority. He said that he could not countenance rebellion, and therefore dissolved the Assembly. When an Assembly was dissolved, it had always been the custom for the members to return quietly to their homes. Now, however, the spirit of freedom and independence was aroused, and, instead of dispersing, they met at a private house in Williamsburg, and resolved that they would not bring into the country anything from England upon which a tax was laid. Copies of this resolution were sent all through the country, and the other colonies joined Virginia in making the same resolution.

The Boston Tea Party.—It is one thing to resolve and another thing to perform. Americans did both. Glass, lead, paper, and tea had been taxed, and not one of these articles was permitted to be brought to America. So determined were the colonists, that when some time afterwards a vessel loaded with tea entered Boston harbor, a number of citizens, who feared the people might be tempted by a sight of the commodity, disguised themselves as Indians, went on board the ship in the night, and threw overboard three hundred and forty-two chests of tea, and then returned to their homes.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was the great military hero of Virginia?
2. What condition of affairs in her colony called for other weapons than the sword?
3. What effect had the submission of Virginia to the navigation laws produced?
4. What did she do in her dilemma?
5. Who was Patrick Henry?

6. Why should his life be an encouragement to the young?
 7. What circumstances fitted him to become the defender of Virginia?
 8. What considerations had prevented the men of Virginia from resisting the oppressions of England?
 9. Explain what the Stamp Act was.
 10. Why did Virginia determine to resist the execution of the Stamp Act?
 11. How was it received in the other colonies?
 12. What of Richard Henry Lee?
 13. What of Peyton Randolph and Richard Bland?
 14. What of Edmund Pendleton?
 15. What of George Mason?
 16. How did Patrick Henry get a seat in the House of Burgesses?
 17. What division of opinion did he find in the House?
 18. What resolutions did he present to the House?
 19. How were they received?
 20. Describe the orator's appearance.
 21. What change came over him when he began to speak?
 22. Repeat a portion of his speech.
 23. What effect did it have?
 24. Who was the student listening at the door?
 25. What effect did the news of these events have through the country?
 26. Tell of the first American Congress.
 27. What was done in Boston?
 28. What effect did these events have upon England?
 29. Who succeeded Lord Fauquier?
 30. Of what other grievance did Virginia complain?
 31. What steps did she take in the matter?
 32. What did the governor do?
 33. Did the Assembly disperse?
 34. Did America act as well as resolve?
 35. What decisive step was taken at Boston?
-

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON THE COLONIAL PERIOD

II: 1675-1775.

1. Who was the Governor of Virginia in 1675?
2. What kind of governor had he been up to this time?
3. Who was Nathaniel Bacon, and what was the cause of his rebellion?
4. Give an account of Bacon's Rebellion.
5. What was the chief thing accomplished by it?
6. How did Governor Berkeley behave after Bacon's death?
7. What finally became of Governor Berkeley?
8. Who succeeded him?
9. Give an account of the Tobacco Rebellion.

10. What great treaty of peace was made with the Indians in the latter part of this century?
11. Give an account of the founding of William and Mary College.
12. What were the most important events of Governor Spotswood's administration?
13. Give an account of the settlement, manners, and customs of the Valley of Virginia.
14. Tell the story of the early life of Washington.
15. What was the cause of the troubles between the French and the English in America?
16. Tell the story of Washington's part in this struggle up to Braddock's Campaign.
17. Give an account of Braddock's Campaign.
18. What put an end to the war?
19. Explain the chief cause of the conflict between England and her American colonies.
20. What act was passed by Parliament that caused special indignation in America?
21. Give an account of Patrick Henry's attitude toward English tyranny.
22. What did Governor Botetourt do to subdue the Virginians?

PERIOD II: VIRGINIA DURING THE REVOLUTION,
1775-1783.

CHAPTER XXI.

1774.

DEATH OF LORD BOTETOURT—LORD DUNMORE SUCCEEDS HIM AS GOVERNOR OF VIRGINIA—HIS DIFFICULTIES WITH THE ASSEMBLY—INDIAN TROUBLES—BATTLE OF POINT PLEASANT—LOGAN—MEETING OF THE VIRGINIA CONVENTION IN ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND.

Governor Dunmore.—In 1774 Lord Botetourt died, beloved and respected by all who knew him. His death was doubtless hastened by the troubles and perplexities of his position. The people of Virginia showed their appreciation of his worth by erecting a monument to him at Williamsburg, and naming after him one of the most beautiful counties in the State. He was succeeded by Lord Dunmore, the last and the worst of the Colonial Governors

of Virginia. He was not only harsh and rude in his manners, but perfectly unprincipled in his morals, and haughty and tyrannical in the extreme. He came to Virginia accompanied by a favorite, Captain Foy, and with the determination to draw from the people, by every means in his power, both fair and unfair, money to enrich himself and his friend.

Opposition to Dunmore.—But the Virginians were not so easy to deal with as he had expected. The Assembly investigated closely, and refused to sanction his attempts to cheat the people out of their property. His project was to bring on a war between Virginia and Pennsylvania about their boundaries, thinking that if he could inflame the colonies against each other, they would not be able to join together to oppose England, and, besides, would be so much interested in this quarrel that he would be at liberty to carry out his own private plans without hindrance.

But he was again mistaken, for the difference between Virginia and Pennsylvania was peacefully settled. Further, all the colonies were more closely drawn together than ever before by a common interest, and this was the resistance of oppression. As a punishment to the Boston people for throwing the tea overboard, her port had been closed, and no vessel was permitted either to come in or go out, thus cutting off her trade. This so aroused the Virginians that at the next meeting of the Assembly they offered resolutions expressing sympathy for their oppressed brethren. Lord Dunmore, in a great rage, immediately dissolved the Assembly; but instead of dispersing, as he had intended, they adjourned to the Raleigh Tavern, and there, in indignant terms, denounced tea as the source of all their troubles, and declared their purpose not to send one pound of tobacco to England until the port of Boston was opened.

Logan's Revenge.—In the meantime, Governor Dunmore's schemes to produce a diversion from himself and his affairs had revived a fearful evil, which perhaps even he did not intend. The Indian war-whoop was heard once again upon the frontiers, and again were defenceless men, women, and children flying from their savage foe. Reports of these horrors thrilled all hearts at Williamsburg. The white men seem to have begun these outrages. One Colonel Cresap had headed a fearful massacre of the Indians, in which the entire family of a great chief named Logan had been killed. Logan had been a warm friend to the white man, and had done all in his power to keep the peace between the Americans and his own race; but this outrage aroused his savage nature, and he himself led his tribes to war and wreaked his vengeance upon the frontier settlements.

A Fierce Battle.—An army was raised and placed under the command of General Lewis, who marched to Point Pleasant, where the Kanawha River empties into the Ohio. Here he remained some time without seeing the Indians; but one day two young men, venturing out for the purpose of hunting, were suddenly attacked by a large body of Indians. One of these men was killed, and the other fled wounded to the camp to rouse his comrades. In a few moments the whole force was under arms. The Indian war-whoop was heard, and fifteen hundred savages came yelling like an army of demons. They were led on by a gigantic warrior named Cornstalk, whose great skill and cruelty were well known. The Indians now understood the use of fire-arms almost as well as the Americans, and a terrible fire poured from their ranks, which killed and wounded many of the whites. Colonel Charles Lewis, a brother of the general, was mortally wounded, and only contrived to drag himself within the camp before he

expired. When all seemed lost, a reinforcement arrived under Colonel Flemming, who ordered the army to adopt the Indian method of shooting from behind trees. Instantly, as if by magic, both armies disappeared, and little was seen of the fight except the flash of fire-arms. The huge figure of Cornstalk glided from tree to tree, encouraging his men; and his loud voice was heard above the din of battle, calling out, "Be strong! be strong!"

The Indians repulsed.—Colonel Flemming received two balls through his wrist and one through his lungs, but still continued to cheer on his men. The firing kept up all day, and the loss of life was terrible. By the advice of Colonel Flemming, the Virginians adopted a very cunning stratagem. Holding up their hats from behind the trees, they let them fall when the Indians fired; the Indians, thinking the men were falling, rushed forward with their scalping-knives, only to be shot down by the Virginians. At length the Indians began to give way, the Virginians having been reinforced by Colonel Field, who was killed while leading the pursuit. The Indians fought for every inch of ground as they retreated, and it was not until after sunset that they withdrew. Cornstalk himself brought up the rear, and with his own hand struck dead one of his men who showed signs of cowardice. This victory, though complete, was dearly bought, the Virginians having lost one hundred and forty men, among whom were many valuable officers.

Peace with the Indians.—Lord Dunmore had promised to join Lewis, but instead of doing so he went in another direction; and immediately after the battle an order came for Lewis to join him at Shawneetown, eighty miles farther on, as he had succeeded in securing a treaty of peace with the savages. General Lewis at first refused to obey, as he

did not think the Indians meant peace, but at length yielded to Governor Dunmore, only stipulating that every precaution should be taken to prevent treachery. The Indians were encamped within their fortifications, from which only eighteen besides their chiefs were permitted to pass at a time; and they were forced to deposit their arms with the guard at the gate. The negotiation was opened by Cornstalk, who made a long speech in a loud tone of voice, which was heard all over the camp. He accused the Virginians of commencing the war by their massacres, which was undoubtedly true; after this the terms of the treaty were settled, and the prisoners on both sides delivered up.

Logan's Appeal.—It was observed that Logan, the great Cayuga chief, was not present at this interview. Although he would not personally have anything to do with those who had murdered his family, yet, on account of his people, he consented to the peace. While the treaty was going on a man appeared bearing in his hand a letter with the signature of Logan; he found it tied to a war-club in a cabin at some distance from the camp. It was addressed to Lord Dunmore, and was afterwards published throughout England and America. It is considered one of the finest specimens of savage eloquence that was ever penned. I give it to you complete, because I am sure that its simple pathos must touch the hearts of all who read it:

“I appeal to any white man to say if ever he entered Logan's cabin hungry, and he gave him not meat; if ever he came cold and naked, and he clothed him not. During the course of the last long and bloody war, Logan remained idle in his cabin, an advocate for peace. Such was my love for the whites, that my countrymen pointed as they passed, and said, ‘Logan is the friend of white men.’ I had even thought to have lived with you, but for the injuries of one

man. Colonel Cresap, the last spring, in cold blood and unprovoked, murdered all the relations of Logan, not even sparing my women and children. There runs not a drop of my blood in the veins of any living creature. This called on me for revenge. I have sought it: I have killed many; I have fully glutted my vengeance; for my country I rejoice at the beams of peace. But do not harbor a thought that mine is the joy of fear. Logan never felt fear. He will not turn on his heel to save his life. Who is there to mourn for Logan?—Not one.”

The Clouds of War.—But a more obstinate contest was in progress than that with the Indians. Thick clouds were swiftly gathering, which were to burst in the storms of war between England and America. Notwithstanding the remonstrances of patriots on both sides of the water, notwithstanding the firm determination, strictly adhered to by the colonists, not to send anything to England or to receive anything from England until their grievances were removed, still the trouble increased rather than diminished.

The Virginia Convention.—In the month of March, 1774, the Virginia Convention met at Richmond, which was then a small town of wooden houses built over the hills that sloped down to the river. Upon what is now called Church Hill there stands an old wooden church, St. John’s, with which many Virginians are familiar. It was in this very building that the Convention met to deliberate upon the course to be pursued in the gathering crisis. Virginia had not yet acknowledged, even to herself, that war was inevitable. When, however, day after day ships arrived from England bringing armed troops, which were quartered in the town; when over the waters of Chesapeake Bay she saw the English vessels of war hovering near her coast, she

knew that if liberty was to be preserved, she must, without delay, put herself in a posture of defence. It was for the mode of doing this that the Convention had now assembled. It was composed of representatives from all the different counties in the colony: and it is interesting and instructive to read the bold instructions which the hardy patriots at home dared to give to these delegates.

Instructions to Delegates.—I have now before me a curious relic of this time. It is a document printed on white satin, and contains the instructions from the freeholders of Augusta County to their representatives to this Convention. The satin is yellow with age, but the principles imprinted upon it should ever remain fresh in the breasts of freemen. It was, in effect, a declaration of their determination to be a free people. After expressing loyalty and attachment to their sovereign, the King of England, the men of Augusta declare that their fathers left their native land and came to the wilderness to enjoy liberty of conscience and the rights of human nature, and these rights they were fully determined should never be surrendered to any parliament or body of men on earth, in which they were not represented. Nor did Augusta stand alone; other counties gave similar instructions to their delegates. Therefore, the body of men who gathered in convention at Richmond went strengthened by the knowledge, that whatever course might be decided upon for the defence of Virginia the people at home were ready to lay down their purses and their lives to accomplish it.

Patrick Henry's Patriotism.—Patrick Henry proposed that the citizens of the different counties should be formed into military companies and drilled in the arts of war. This looked so much like threatening England, that the more timid members drew back in alarm. "What is the

use," said they, "of taking a bold stand which we have no means of maintaining? Without soldiers, without arms, and without officers, shall we attempt to contend against the strongest military power in the world?" Acknowledging their loyalty to England, they pictured the comforts and luxuries they might continue to enjoy were only peaceful means used to assert their rights.

A Grand Oration.—Then outspoke that voice of Virginia, Patrick Henry. Turning his piercing eyes from one member of the Convention to another, he thrilled every heart with his fiery eloquence. I wish I could give you his whole speech; I feel sure that your hearts too would glow with the enthusiasm which moved him. He besought the members to give up at once the idea that the storm of war could by any means be averted; he reminded them how again and again they had prostrated themselves before the throne of England, petitioning simply for their rights, and had met with nothing but disregard and insult. If they wished to be free, they must fight, and He who had declared that the "race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong" would help them in their helplessness, and raise up friends for them in their weakness. His wonderful speech closed with these memorable words: "Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!" Not a sound broke the stillness as the great orator took his seat. His words had reached every heart; there were no timid men now in the Convention; all were ready to give up their lives in the defence of liberty.

Battle of Lexington.—Mr. Henry's proposition was adopted; men from every county were enrolled in the army of Virginia, and trained with all diligence in military

duties. But these preparations had scarcely begun before news arrived which still more fired the hearts of the Virginians. A battle had been fought on the plains of Lexington, in Massachusetts, between the British forces and the Massachusetts militia, in which the first blood of the Revolutionary War was shed.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. What probably caused the death of Lord Botetourt?
3. What was the character of his successor, and how did he seek to accomplish his ends?
4. Did he succeed in his schemes?
5. Why did he dissolve the Assembly, and did they disperse at his bidding?
6. What fearful evil did Dunmore's schemes bring upon Virginia?
7. What did Colonel Cresap do?
8. Who was Logan?
9. To what point did General Lewis conduct his men?
10. Give an account of the battle of Point Pleasant.
11. Which side gained the victory?
12. Give an account of the treaty of Shawneetown.
13. How did Logan act?
14. Read aloud his letter to Lord Dunmore.
15. What difficulties were gathering over America?
16. Where did the Virginia Convention assemble?
17. Give an account of the condition of affairs in Virginia.
18. Who composed the Convention?
19. What instructions did Augusta and other counties give their representatives?
20. What was Patrick Henry's proposition, and how was it received?
21. What did Patrick Henry answer?
22. Give the closing words of his speech.
23. What was the result of his eloquence?
24. What news from Massachusetts still more fired the hearts of the Virginians?

CHAPTER XXII.

1775.

GOVERNOR DUNMORE'S TREACHERY—THE POWDER AT WILLIAMSBURG—
THE REVOLUTION BEGUN—BATTLE OF HAMPTON—ATTACK ON
JAMESTOWN—THE TORIES.

Lord Dunmore's Proceedings.—When the news of the proceedings of the Convention, followed closely by that of the battle in Massachusetts, reached Lord Dunmore, he became alarmed, and determined, as far as he could, to take from the Virginians the power of resistance. There was, in the city of Williamsburg, a magazine containing a quantity of powder belonging to the colony. In the dead of night a body of armed sailors came up to the city, and, by order of Lord Dunmore, removed twenty barrels of powder to their vessel, which lay in York River. This caused the most intense excitement in Williamsburg. Groups of men, with gloomy and angry faces, gathered in knots about the streets. The Common Council sent an address to the governor, asking an explanation. They reminded him that the powder had been placed in the magazine for public use, and that if their slaves, who had been urged by wicked persons to insurrection, should now rise, the people would be utterly defenceless. Governor Dunmore returned a most unsatisfactory answer, and when, a short time afterwards, he heard that the citizens were in arms, he swore that if a hair of his head, or of those who had been instrumental in taking away the powder, was touched, he would himself arm the slaves and burn Williamsburg to the ground.

Public Indignation.—Those who knew Lord Dunmore best, knew that this was no vain threat: he was wicked enough to commit this or any other outrage; but this knowledge, instead of allaying, increased the excitement, and the news as it spread throughout the country roused indignation everywhere. A party of citizens entered the magazine at night, and took from it a number of pistols, muskets, and other military articles.

The "Fowey."—There were, at this time, lying in the waters of Virginia a number of English war vessels. One of them, the "Fowey," was in York River, directly opposite to Yorktown. As soon as the arms were removed from the magazine, Lord Dunmore sent a messenger to the captain of the "Fowey," asking him to send a body of armed men to protect him in his palace. This request was complied with, and after the departure of the troops, the captain of the "Fowey" addressed a letter to Thomas Nelson, a prominent citizen of Yorktown, who had been very active in soothing the discontent among the people and in upholding the authority of the king in the colony. The letter informed Mr. Nelson of Lord Dunmore's request and his compliance with it. The captain then went on to express a hope that they would meet with no opposition in Williamsburg, as it was his determination, in such an event, to open his guns upon Yorktown, which was full of defenceless women and children. You will easily understand the barbarity of this determination, when you consider that the people in Yorktown were in no way responsible for the acts of the people of Williamsburg.

Patrick Henry to the Rescue.—Patrick Henry watched the progress of affairs with intense interest. He believed that the time had arrived for active measures, and allowed himself to be placed in command of a body of volunteers,

organized for the purpose of retaking the powder which Lord Dunmore had stolen. The effect was magical. His name aroused the enthusiasm of the entire country. Companies of horse and foot flocked to his standard, and in a short time not less than five thousand men were in arms, ready to march at a moment's warning, and to undertake any work he might order.

Lord Dunmore's Alarm.—Lord Dunmore was alarmed, and sent a messenger to Mr. Henry, offering to pay for the powder that had been taken. This being the object which they were determined to accomplish, Mr. Henry and his men, after receiving the money, disbanded and returned in triumph to their homes. This incident, though it ended peacefully, convinced the governor and the British Ministry that Virginia was in earnest, and that it was dangerous to trifle with her. In the hope of allaying the excitement, Lord Dunmore summoned a meeting of the Assembly on the 1st day of June. This was the last meeting of the House of Burgesses; the next time these patriots assembled it was as a Legislature, to make laws for their government without regard to royal authority.

The Burgesses assemble.—In obedience to the summons, the Burgesses arrived in Williamsburg, their serious, resolved faces showing their sense of coming danger. Many of them wore hunting-shirts, and brought in their hands the rifles which were afterwards used upon the field of battle. At the opening of the session the governor made a very courteous speech, in which he said that England was ready to hold out the olive-branch of peace, provided the Virginians would agree to pay their proportion of the public debt of the mother-country. If this offer had been made at an earlier period, there is little doubt that

it would have been accepted; but Virginia, conscious of her strength, was now in no mood to be conciliated by half measures. Thomas Jefferson presented a paper to the House, in which he declared that the people of Virginia had a right to bestow their money where they pleased. He further said that they would not be forced by taxation or otherwise to contribute to the treasury of England, for she had invaded their country by sea and land, and had been unjust and oppressive.

An Infamous Plot.—Soon after this the Virginians were further inflamed by the discovery of an infamous plot of Lord Dunmore's for destroying his opponents in the Assembly. On the night of the 5th of June several young men went into the magazine at Williamsburg for the purpose of getting arms. As they passed the door a cord attached to it fired off a spring-gun, by which one of the men had his shoulder torn to pieces, and another lost three of his fingers. When this catastrophe became known, the fact was recalled that Lord Dunmore had always kept the key of the magazine, and had that very day officially insisted upon giving it into the possession of the House of Burgesses, in order that they might investigate the removal of the gunpowder.

Suspicion being thus aroused, an examination was forthwith made, and the diabolical plot revealed itself. Three or four barrels of gunpowder were found concealed under the floor of the magazine, intended to be used, doubtless, as a mine to blow up the committee appointed to investigate the matter of the powder removal. The indignation of the people at this discovery was extreme, and there is no telling what punishment they might not have inflicted upon the wicked governor, had he not fled from the palace with his wife and servants. He took refuge on board the "Fowey," at Yorktown. The House

of Burgesses despatched a message to him assuring him of safety, and of their readiness to unite with him in restoring order to the country. He could not be induced to trust them, but sent the House an insolent order to come on board the "Fowey" to consult with him there. Of course this was declined; all correspondence between Dunmore and the Assembly ceased, and soon afterwards the House of Burgesses adjourned. With it passed away forever the royal authority in Virginia.

The War begins.—Before their separation, the members agreed to meet in convention at Richmond, and there they instituted vigorous measures for arming Virginia. War was no longer a matter of doubt. Arrangements for the defence of Virginia were not begun a moment too soon, for the malignant and treacherous Dunmore was taking every step for her total ruin. He had sailed out of York River in the "Fowey," and had fixed his headquarters at Norfolk, then the most flourishing town in Virginia. Under his command, besides the "Fowey," were three other vessels,—the "Mercury," the "Kingfisher," and the "Otto,"—besides a number of smaller vessels.

The Victory at Hampton.—On the end of the peninsula between York and James Rivers, at the little town of Hampton, the first battle in Virginia was fought. For some time the small vessels of Lord Dunmore had been harassing the coast, plundering the people and destroying their property, and the town of Hampton was daily expecting an attack. The people made such simple arrangements for their defence as their limited means allowed. Remember that Virginia had no navy and no regularly organized army, and was in these respects no match for the English under Lord Dunmore. But the battle is not always with the strong, and vigilance, activity, and bravery

in a good cause sometimes make up for difference in numbers.

Colonel Woodford, with the Culpeper riflemen, one hundred in number, hearing of the expected attack, marched all night through a heavy rain, and at eight o'clock on the morning of the 25th of October was ready to aid the gallant militia at Hampton in repelling the attack. He found them emboldened by a slight success they had met with the day before. Six tenders full of armed men under Captain Squires had approached the town, and, not expecting any opposition, had landed under a heavy fire to cover their attack. To their surprise, they were received by a shower of rifle-bullets. Marksmen concealed behind fences and in the town poured a precise and deadly fire upon them, and they were glad to escape to their boats, not, however, without the loss of a great many men.

The Virginians, reinforced by Colonel Woodford and his riflemen, awaited quietly the second attack. They had sunk obstructions in the river immediately in front of the town, but these the British removed in the night, and in the morning they drew up their fleet in the harbor with the guns bearing upon the town. In this fight the Virginians had no fire-arms but their rifles, to oppose the English cannon. When the cannonade commenced, the riflemen drew close to the water's edge, and concealing themselves behind trees, bushes, houses, and fences, opened their unerring fire upon the British vessels. The men at the guns were killed, and not a sailor touched a sail without being shot by the deadly balls from the Virginia rifles. Soon there was confusion upon the British decks. It was impossible to guide the vessels or to man the guns, because of the fatal precision of the Virginia riflemen. In dismay, the British tried to draw off and make their escape into the bay. Some succeeded, but two of the

tenders drifted ashore and were captured, with a great many prisoners. It was with great difficulty that any of the vessels escaped. A number of men went down to a narrow channel to oppose the egress of the British into the bay, and the whole fleet would have been captured but for the report that a large body of the British were advancing from another direction. The Virginians retreated and the vessels escaped.

Dunmore's next Proceedings.—Soon afterwards an attack made by Dunmore upon Jamestown was repelled with great spirit. Alarmed at the boldness everywhere



ATTACK ON HAMPTON.

manifested, and seeing the great necessity for striking a blow that would create terror and discouragement, Dunmore left Norfolk and went to Princess Anne County to capture some cannon belonging to the colonists. He

took with him a large force, composed of regulars, fugitive slaves, and *Tories* (the name given to those who took the part of England against their own countrymen). Encountering a body of Virginia militia under Colonel Hutchings, they attacked them suddenly, threw them into confusion, and the Virginians retreated, leaving Colonel Hutchings wounded upon the field.

His Proclamation.—One would think from Lord Dunmore's exultation over this slight success that all opposition had been overcome. Emboldened by this victory he issued a proclamation commanding everybody to return to their allegiance to his Majesty the king, under penalty of being declared traitors and having their property confiscated. So far from striking terror, to the hearts of the colonists, as he expected it would do, this proclamation had just the opposite effect. The Virginians everywhere left their ordinary employments and flocked to arms, and the difficulty of the committee on military affairs was not how to obtain men, but how to furnish them arms and ammunition.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. What effect did the news have on Lord Dunmore?
3. What steps did he take to reduce the Virginians to helplessness?
4. What did the Council do, and what reply did Dunmore make?
5. What effect did this have upon the citizens?
6. What was Lord Dunmore's next step, and how was he aided in his designs by the captain of the "Fowey?"
7. How did Patrick Henry interfere at this juncture, and with what effect?
8. What was the effect of these proceedings on the governor?
9. Give an account of the meeting of the House of Burgesses.
10. Did they accept terms from England?
11. What plot was now discovered, and how?
12. What did Lord Dunmore do?

13. Give an account of the adjournment of the last House of Burgesses.
14. How did the people of Virginia employ themselves?
15. Who were the three most influential men in Virginia?
16. To what position was Washington called, and when?
17. What was Lord Dunmore's situation?
18. Give an account of the first battle of the Revolution in Virginia.
19. Which side had the advantage in numbers and munitions of war?
20. Who commanded the Virginians?
21. Which side gained the victory?
22. Who were the Tories?
23. What slight advantage did Dunmore soon after gain?
24. What effect did this success have upon the opposing parties?

CHAPTER XXIII.

1775.—CONTINUED.

DUNMORE INCITES THE INDIANS TO THE MASSACRE OF THE WHITES—
BATTLE OF GREAT BRIDGE—NORFOLK BURNED—GWYNN'S ISLAND.

Dunmore's Infamous Plot.—An event now occurred which exasperated the people still more against the infamous Dunmore. A man named Connelly, who was suspected of carrying communications from Dunmore to the British commander, General Gage, at Boston, was arrested at Hagerstown, Maryland. Upon searching his baggage, a large sum of money was found, and the outline of a scheme for the ruin of Virginia. There was a letter from Dunmore, addressed to White-Eyes, an Indian chief, written in the figurative and flowery style which he supposed would please the Indians. He begs his "dear brother, Captain White-Eyes," to call together Cornstalk and all the other chiefs, and entreats them to take up the hatchet against the "Long Knives" (their name for the Virginians). As a reward for this, he promised them rich presents and ample protection, in addition to the money

sent by Connelly. Thus the infamous governor, not content with rousing the slaves to fight against their masters, was now inciting savages to bring the tomahawk and scalping-knife upon the defenceless inhabitants of Virginia. Happily, his plot was discovered in time.

The Opposing Armies.—About twelve miles from Norfolk, the Great Bridge crossed a branch of Elizabeth River. It was surrounded by a swamp, through which a road led to the city. On a little piece of firm ground on the Norfolk side Lord Dunmore had erected a fort which commanded the bridge. The Virginians took possession of a small village a short distance off. In this state the two armies remained for several days, watching each other, and prepared to seize upon any circumstance which would give one the advantage over the other. This Great Bridge was looked upon as a very important point, commanding the possession of the city of Norfolk.

A Virginian Stratagem.—In order to precipitate a contest, the Virginians had recourse to a stratagem. A negro boy, belonging to Major Marshall, was sent to Lord Dunmore. He represented himself as a deserter, and reported that the Virginians had only three hundred "shirt men," a term used to distinguish the patriots, whose only uniform was the graceful hunting-shirt, which afterwards became so celebrated in the Revolution. Believing this story, Dunmore gave vent to his exultation, as he thought that he saw before him an opportunity of wreaking vengeance upon the Virginians. He mustered his whole force, and gave the order for marching out in the night and forcing the breastworks of his hated foe. In order to stimulate his troops to desperate deeds he told them that the Virginians were no better than savages, and were wanting in courage and determination; that in all probability they would not stand fire at all; but if by any chance

they were permitted to triumph, the English need expect no quarter, as they would be scalped according to the rules of savage warfare.

The British defeated.—Early in the morning of December 9, the Virginians beheld the enemy advancing towards their breastworks. They were commanded by Captain Fordyce, a brave officer. Waving his cap over his head, he led his men, in the face of a terrible fire which ran all along the American lines, directly up to the breastworks. He received a shot in the knee and fell forward, but jumping up, he brushed his knee as if he had only stumbled. In a moment afterwards he fell again, pierced by fourteen bullets. The death of their commander threw everything into confusion. The officer next in command to Fordyce was mortally wounded; other officers were disabled by wounds, and many privates had fallen. In this desperate situation a precipitate retreat towards their fort at Norfolk was the only resource left to the English.

Pursuit.—But they were not allowed to escap  without a vigorous pursuit. It was conducted by the brave Colonel Stevens, who captured many prisoners, and, what was still more valuable, two pieces of cannon. The loss of the British in this engagement was one hundred and two killed and wounded. One of the Virginians, writing of the scene, says, “I saw the horrors of war in perfection, worse than can be imagined: ten and twelve bullets through many, limbs broken in two or three places, brains turning out. Good God! what will satisfy the governor? The only damage to our men was a wound in the finger of one of them.”

Virginian Humanity.—After the account they had received of the savage barbarity to be expected from the Virginians, the English soldiers who fell into their hands were astonished to find themselves not only humanely

but courteously treated. One poor fellow who lay wounded upon the field, seeing his captor approach, cried out, "For God's sake, do not scalp me!" He was answered, "Put your arm around my neck, and I will show you what I intend to do." Taking him in his arms, he bore him tenderly along till he laid him down within the breastworks. The gallant Fordyce was buried with military honors. Lieutenant Battul, the second in command, wounded and a prisoner, sent a letter under a flag of truce to his comrades, in which he gratefully acknowledged the kindness and courtesy he had received.

The Virginia Convention at their next meeting voted a letter of approbation to Colonel Woodford, the officer in command of the patriots, and instructed him always to treat the vanquished with lenity and kindness. As Dunmore had not only heaped insult and contumely upon them, but had basely plotted their destruction by treachery, fire, and sword, by the furious savage and the brutal slave, the conduct of the Virginians can not be too much admired.

Dunmore's Cowardice.—Nothing could exceed the rage of Lord Dunmore at this defeat; he raved like a madman, and threatened to hang the messenger who brought him the tidings, but there was no time for the indulgence of passion. Couriers arrived, saying that Woodford with his men was approaching Norfolk, as there was nothing now to obstruct his progress. Men, women, and children crowded the streets, entreating help; for during the long occupation of the city by British troops the Tories had flocked into it from all parts of the State, and naturally feared to meet their injured countrymen. But they could hope for nothing from Lord Dunmore, who was brave enough when danger was at a distance, but whose cowardly heart quailed

at its approach. He measured his fears by his deserts, and thinking only of his own safety, went hastily aboard a man-of-war in the harbor. All the Tories, who could, took refuge with the English fleet.

Norfolk occupied.—Meanwhile, Woodford had been reinforced by Colonel Howe, of North Carolina, who brought with him four hundred fresh troops. They took possession of Norfolk without opposition, and were warmly welcomed by those brave citizens who had remained faithful to their country in its hour of trial. Woodford issued a proclamation offering protection to the country people, and inviting them to bring their supplies into the town. We read of but one punishment meted out to those who had been most active in betraying their country. Such of them as were taken in arms were sent to places of confinement handcuffed with their negro fellow-soldiers. This was considered but just, as they had fought against their country upon equal terms with the negroes.

Dunmore's Requisitions.—It might now be hoped, and naturally expected, that Dunmore, having retired from the town, would not seek to molest or injure it in any way, particularly as he knew that a large portion of its inhabitants were friendly to him; but his kindly consideration never went beyond himself. He at first contented himself with idle threats and clamors for provisions. He had been so long accustomed to luxuries, that he could ill bear being reduced to the naval stores, and reinforced his larder constantly by marauding upon the unprotected plantations and towns upon the rivers. Even this did not satisfy him; he must have those luxuries which the city of Norfolk alone could afford him. Hence he sent a message to the commanders that he should be sorry to fire upon the town, but that he should do so unless

a plentiful supply of provisions was sent to him and his men. This of course was refused; but a supply was continually sent for the captain's private table. This, however, did not satisfy the unreasonable commander, and the failure of the inhabitants to comply fully with his request was his excuse for burning the city of Norfolk to the ground.



NORFOLK BOMBARDED AND BURNED.

Norfolk bombarded and burned.—This happened on the 1st day of January, 1776, a year which from its beginning to its end was replete with momentous events to the people of America. Between three and four o'clock in the afternoon the English opened a heavy cannonade upon the devoted city; under cover of this, some sailors landed and

set fire to a number of wooden houses upon the wharves. The efforts of the Americans to stop the conflagration were unsuccessful. The wind was against them and blew fiercely from the shore, carrying the burning timbers into the heart of the town. The horrors of the scene were heightened by the continuous roar of the cannon from the ships and the musketry from the shore: for fighting was going on above the ruins of the houses. The intrepid Stevens added to his fame in this affair, as he rushed to the water's side and drove back a large party of British who had just landed, and compelled them, amidst slaughter, to retreat. The fire lasted for three days, and nine-tenths of the most flourishing and the richest town in Virginia, were destroyed. Its beautiful harbor and other natural advantages had prompted its growth, and wealth had poured in upon it. Such was the great catastrophe which deprived four thousand people of their homes.

Patriotism.—Those who were true Virginians were too much interested in the success of their struggle to mind mere personal loss. One of these patriots wrote to a friend upon this occasion, "We do not care for our towns, and the destruction of our houses does not cost us a sigh. I have long since given up mine as lost; and I feel such indignation against the authors of our calamities, and such concern for the public at large, that I cannot think of my own puny person and insignificant affairs."

A Piratical Cruise.—And now the career of the wretched Dunmore was happily drawing to a close. His fleet consisted not only of men-of-war, but of more than fifty transports, filled with unhappy Tories and negroes and a rabble of convicts and other low characters, all of whom had to be fed. So he cruised up and down the bay, landing at one place, burning a house, stealing private property at another, and committing depredations of every sort after his own fashion.

General Lee.—Just at this time Congress put Major-General Charles Lee in command of the forces in Virginia. This celebrated person was an Englishman by birth, a soldier of fortune, of an adventurous spirit, brave, and talented, but of a temper which afterwards was the cause of much trouble in the army. In his later career he aspired to the position of commander-in-chief, and his jealousy of Washington led to such acts of insubordination that he was finally court-martialed and dismissed from the army.

Lee saw that the only way to deal with Dunmore was to cut off his supplies; so he ordered that all the inhabitants near to the sea-coast, with their live-stock and other property, should be removed to the interior; and that any Virginian who should be found in correspondence with the enemy should be treated as a traitor, and be sent a handcuffed prisoner to Williamsburg. These seemed to be harsh measures, but they were necessary commands, and their wisdom was soon evident, for Lord Dunmore found himself and companions in imminent danger of starvation. But Dunmore was not easily daunted in pursuit of creature comforts.

Gwynn's Island.—There lies at the mouth of the river Piankatank, in Matthews County, a beautiful island, now called Gwynn's Island, containing about two thousand acres of land. Its natural fertility had been greatly improved by cultivation, and it abounded in fruits, vegetables, fine water, cattle, and everything that could make it a desirable asylum for the floating colony of Lord Dunmore. General Lee had stationed his vigilant soldiers along the shore, to keep watch over the English fleet and prevent any landing from it. The guards were surprised to see the whole flotilla come out of Hampton Roads, one May morning. After sailing in one direction, and then

in another, until the watchers were completely puzzled, the whole fleet sailed rapidly up the bay. Before the object of these manœuvres could be guessed the fleet had entered the mouth of Rappahannock River, and the motley crew had occupied and intrenched themselves on Gwynn's Island. They were not to remain masters of this Eden, for the Virginians could not rest satisfied while this degraded band, with their execrated leader, found refuge within their territory.

The Fleet repulsed.—General Andrew Lewis with a party of men was sent to dislodge them. This brave officer who had already distinguished himself in the fight with the Indians at Point Pleasant, joyfully accepted a position which would give him the opportunity of chastising one who had been a greater enemy to Virginia than all of the savages combined. He threw up intrenchments on a point of land opposite Gwynn's Island, and upon these mounted his guns. The enemy, intrenched within fortifications on the island, with their ships lying in the deep waters around, could be plainly seen. One of the ships, the "Dunmore," lay about five hundred yards from the shore. General Lewis himself opened the engagement by firing a gun at this vessel, aboard of which was the governor. The great cannon gave a roar as it sent out its terrible messenger, which passed directly through the hull of the vessel and did great damage. It was followed by another ball, and then another, each of which did its duty nobly, breaking the timber and scattering splinters in every direction. One of the latter wounded Dunmore, smashed his china around him, and so frightened his lordship that he cried out, "Good God! that ever I should have come to this." The fight did not last very long. The captains of the vessels were glad enough to cut their cables and make off in great haste. They would all have been captured had not the wind favored their retreat.

General Lewis could not immediately go over to the island for want of boats; but the next morning, having collected a sufficient number to transport his troops, he crossed over. A terrible scene met his eyes. During the month in which Dunmore had held possession of their beautiful island, the small-pox and other diseases had committed such ravages upon his miserable crew that five hundred are supposed to have died. Corpses in a state of putrefaction lay strewn along the shore in half-dug trenches, and miserable dying creatures had crawled to the water's edge to beg that they might be saved from death. The enemy in their haste left behind them a great deal of valuable property, which fell into the hands of the victors.

Dunmore's Final Proceedings.—Driven from this retreat, Dunmore found another on St. George's Island in the Potomac River, but this too he was soon compelled to abandon. While ascending the river, he landed near the mouth of Acquia Creek, and wantonly burnt a beautiful dwelling belonging to Mr. Brent, and was proceeding to destroy a valuable mill hard by, when the Prince William militia arrived and drove him to his boats. The fleet dropped down the river on the ensuing day, and some of his vessels, driven ashore by a gale of wind, were lost. As one resource after another failed him, his malignant spirit began to break. The excessive heat of the season, the impurity of the water, the bad quality and scanty supply of provisions, engendered fearful diseases in the crowded vessels, which hourly plunged numbers into a watery grave. Thus loaded with the execrations of the people he had been appointed to govern, defeated in all his schemes for their ruin, hunted from place to place by their just resentment, Dunmore found himself a fugitive from the land where he had hoped to plant the standard of

victory, and upon whose people he had sought to wreak a terrible vengeance. He returned to England, and here our history leaves him. Though he never came back to the shores of Virginia, her people will never forget the events that connected him with her history.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of these events?
 2. What discovery was made which still further exasperated the Virginians against Dunmore?
 3. Where was the Great Bridge, and what was its importance?
 4. To what stratagem did Virginians resort in order to bring on the fight?
 5. How did Lord Dunmore receive the news?
 6. How did he seek to stimulate his troops?
 7. Who commanded the English?
 8. Give an account of their advance.
 9. Give an account of the battle.
 10. How is the scene described?
 11. How did the victors behave to their prisoners?
 12. What did the Virginia Convention do?
 13. How did Lord Dunmore behave under defeat?
 14. What course did he adopt?
 15. Give an account of the occupation of Norfolk by the Virginia troops.
 16. What was Dunmore's course?
 17. What dastardly revenge did he next take?
 18. Give an account of the burning of Norfolk.
 19. How did the patriots feel about the loss of their property?
 20. What class of persons composed Dunmore's fleet?
 21. Who was appointed to the command of the Virginia forces?
 22. What steps did he take?
 23. Describe the retreat of Dunmore to Gwynn's Island.
 24. What steps were taken to dislodge him?
 25. Describe the battle and retreat of Dunmore.
 26. What condition of affairs was discovered on the island?
 27. Where did Dunmore next go?
 28. What was the end of his story?
-

CHAPTER XXIV.

1776.

THE GENERAL CONVENTION MEETS AT WILLIAMSBURG—DECLARATION OF RIGHTS—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—PATRICK HENRY CHOSEN GOVERNOR—THE SEAL OF VIRGINIA—RELIGIOUS FREEDOM DECLARED—THE LAW OF PRIMOGENITURE.

Virginia's Declaration of Independence.—Virginia was now fairly launched in the War of the Revolution. She had sought peace, but her plea having been rejected, she no longer wished for it, unless freedom came hand in hand with it. The blood of her sons had been shed, her towns had been desolated, and her property pillaged by the king's troops. More than once the British had been forced to acknowledge her victory over them upon hard-fought fields, and now, while her soldiers were winning freedom with the sword, her statesmen were carving out for her a government worthy to last through all succeeding generations.

A Convention, composed of delegates from all of the counties of Virginia, met at Williamsburg in May, 1776, to consider the best course for Virginia to take in this crisis. On the 15th of the month, Mr. Archibald Cary, of Chesterfield, offered a resolution citing the grievances of the colonies, especially those of Virginia, and declaring that there was no alternative but abject submission to or total separation from Great Britain. "Therefore, we unanimously resolve, appealing to the Searcher of hearts for help in defending the justice of our cause, that the delegates appointed to represent this colony in the General Congress be instructed to propose to that body to declare

the united colonies free and independent States, absolved from all allegiance to or dependence on Great Britain, and to give the assent of this colony to any measure deemed necessary for the good of the whole, provided the power of forming a government for, and the regulations of, each colony be left to the respective Legislatures of each colony." It was further unanimously resolved that "a committee be appointed to prepare a Declaration of Rights and such a plan of government as shall be most likely to maintain law and order and secure substantial and equal benefit and liberty to the people."

George Mason, who had written the Bill of State Rights in 1776, also drew up a constitution for the State, which was adopted five days before the Declaration of Independence. Virginia asserted her independence of Great Britain on June 29, 1776, and the United States on the 4th of July following. One of Virginia's most gifted sons* thus pictures the great act by which Virginia addressed herself to the the solemn and responsible act of self-government: "On that day Virginia exhibited to the world a grand spectacle; it was on that day that she renounced her colonial dependence on Great Britain, and separated herself from that kingdom. Then it was that, bursting the manacles of a foreign tyranny, she in the same moment imposed upon herself the salutary restraints of law and order. In that moment she commenced the work of forming a government complete within itself, and having perfected that work, she, on the 29th of June in the same year, performed the highest functions of independent sovereignty by adopting, ordaining, and establishing the Constitution under which all of us were born! Then it was that, sufficient to herself for all the purposes of government, she prescribed

*Judge Beverley Tucker.

that oath of fealty and allegiance to her sole and separate sovereignty, which all of us who have held any office under her authority have solemnly called upon the Searcher of hearts to witness and record. At that time it could not be certainly known that the other colonies would take the same decisive step. It was indeed expected. In the same breath in which Virginia had declared her independence she had advised it. She had instructed her delegates in the General Congress to urge it, and it was by the voice of one of her sons,* whose name will ever live in history, that the word of power was spoken at which the chains that bound the colonies to the parent kingdom fell asunder, as flax that severs at the touch of fire. But even then, and while the terms of the general Declaration of Independence were yet unsettled, hers had already gone forth. The voice of her defiance was already ringing in the ears of the tyrant, hers was the cry that determined him to the strife, hers was the shout that invited his vengeance. "Me! me! Adsum qui feci. In me convertite ferrum!" "†

Mr. George Mason, of Gunston Hall, on the Potomac, was a retiring country gentleman, not ambitious of political prominence, but destined by Providence to do a work for Virginia which must always place him in the front rank as a patriot and a man of genius, for it was he who, as we have seen, framed both the Bill of Rights and the first Constitution for the government of the State.

Declaration of Rights.—In the Declaration of Rights the principle was maintained that all men being entitled to certain rights,—namely, the enjoyment of life and happiness, and liberty, the means of acquiring and possessing property, and of obtaining happiness and

*Thomas Jefferson.

†Translation: "Me! me! Here am I who have done it; against me direct thy sword."

safety,—the government of a country ought to be administered for the protection of the people and the maintenance of these rights, and that “whereas, George the Third, King of Great Britain, had endeavored to pervert the government of Virginia into an insupportable tyranny, by imposing taxes without the consent of the people, by cutting off their trade with all parts of the world, by plundering their seas, ravaging their coasts, burning their towns, and destroying their lives: by inciting the negroes to rise in arms against them, and endeavoring to bring upon the inhabitants of the frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an utter destruction of all ages, sexes, and condition of existence, and by answering their repeated petitions for redress by a repetition of injuries,—that for these and many other acts of misrule and tyranny, the government of Virginia, as exercised under the crown of Great Britain, is totally dissolved.”

Public rejoicing.—This decisive step produced the greatest benefit; it removed all doubt and uncertainty from the public mind; the people felt that separation from Great Britain was a fixed fact, and demonstrations of joy everywhere showed the popular approval of the course the Convention had taken. At Williamsburg military parades, discharges of artillery, dinners, toasts, and general illumination showed the pleasure which both the citizens and soldiers felt at the decisive step which dissolved their union with a tyrannical and unnatural mother.

Declaration of Independence.—The Declaration of Rights in Virginia was soon followed by the Declaration of Independence, in which all of the American colonies united. This was written by Thomas Jefferson, the “Pen of Virginia,” as Washington was the sword, and Patrick Henry the tongue. It expressed the same sentiments as the

Declaration of Rights, which you know was the work of George Mason. It was adopted on the 4th of July, 1776. Each colony then framed a constitution for its separate government. This was to consist of a governor and a legislature; the duty of the latter was to make laws, and that of the governor to execute them. Besides, there were to be three different courts, which were to make decisions in doubtful cases. For instance, the legislature makes a law that every murderer must hang; when a man becomes liable to this penalty, he is tried first by the lowest court, and, if condemned, he has a right to demand a trial by a second court, and then again by a third; if all of the courts find him guilty of murder, he is condemned to die, and the governor has to order his execution.

The First Governor of the State.—Patrick Henry was chosen first governor of Virginia. His appointment was received by all classes with the greatest satisfaction. A committee was appointed to wait upon him and inform him of the honor which had been conferred upon him. The regiments which he had commanded since the beginning of the troubles congratulated him in the warmest terms upon his unsolicited election “to the highest honor which a free people could bestow.” “Once happy under your military command,” they said, “we hope for more extended blessings under your civil administration; our hearts are willing and our arms are ready to support your authority as chief magistrate, happy that we have lived to see the day when freedom and equal rights, established by the voice of the people, shall prevail throughout the land.” He returned thanks for this address, so expressive of their confidence and affection, announced his determination to do all in his power for the safety, dignity, and happiness of the new commonwealth of Virginia, and then

went on to say that, whilst the officers of the State were exerting themselves to create such a form of government as would best conduce to the happiness and welfare of the people, it remained for them, the soldiers, to save by their valor all that was most precious to mankind. "Go on, gentlemen," he said, "to finish the great work which you have so nobly and successfully begun; convince tyrants that they *shall* bleed, and that you *will* bleed to the last drop before their wicked schemes find success."

Patriotic Enthusiasm.—These brave young colonists were not dismayed at the perils which surrounded them. In their weakness they had defied the strongest power in Europe; yet their hearts beat high. What to them was the smallness of their army and their empty treasury? Free and independent they were determined to live, or not to live at all.

Throughout the country the same enthusiasm was manifested. The American army was then at New York. The Declaration was read to each brigade; it was listened to in respectful silence, followed by bursts of enthusiastic applause. In the evening the equestrian statue of George III., which had been erected six years before, was laid prostrate, and the lead of which it was composed was converted into bullets to fight with. In Boston, Philadelphia, and Baltimore the demonstrations were even more enthusiastic, and traces of royalty were obliterated everywhere.

The Seal of Virginia.—After the constitution of Virginia had been adopted, the subject of interest which next engaged her statesmen was the choice of a device and motto for her seal. A great many suggestions were made, but at length, after much discussion, one proposed by Mr. George Wythe was chosen. A female figure, resting

on a spear with one hand and holding a sword in the other, represents Virtue; her foot rests upon the neck of Tyranny, represented by a prostrate man, with a crown falling from his head, a broken chain in his left hand, and a scourge in his right. Over the head of the female figure is engraved the words "*Sic Semper Tyrannis*," which means "Thus always to tyrants," and underneath, "Virginia."



VIRGINIA.

Liberty of Conscience. — The convention which met this memorable year made many important laws. As we have seen, the early government of Virginia was formed after the model of that in England. The Episcopal, therefore, was the established Church, and although many efforts had been made to do away with some of the restrictions imposed upon other denominations, and to some extent tolerance had been granted, yet the laws against "Dissenters" (as all who were not members of the Church of England were called) were still in full force, and were very oppressive. All dissenting congregations had to support not only their own ministers, but also had to contribute to the support of the Episcopal Church. Moreover, they were liable to be tried and punished for serving God through the forms they most approved. All of the different religious sects were now represented in Virginia, and there was much bitterness of feeling between them and the established Church. That peaceable sect called Quakers, strange to tell, was held in particular aversion and was subjected to special persecution.

But now a spirit of freedom pervaded all classes, and the time had come to apply the same spirit to religion.

The Legislature of Virginia was beset with petitions from dissenting denominations that the laws which placed one church above another might be repealed, and that a free people might worship God by whatever form they thought best. Stormy were the discussions between the members advocating the different sides of this question. Edmund Pendleton, the venerable Speaker of the House, was a strenuous advocate for the Episcopal Church, while Thomas Jefferson strongly urged religious freedom. After some time he succeeded in establishing his views, and liberty of conscience was secured to a free people.

Primogeniture.—Another English law which had been in force in Virginia up to this time remained to be repealed—the law of “Primogeniture.” In England, when a rich man dies, he does not divide his property equally among his children, but the great bulk of it descends to his eldest son, who is called his “heir.” The advantage of this is that it prevents the property from being cut up, and keeps it in the family for centuries. The disadvantages, though, are greater than the advantages; for it exalts one son, not from any merit of his own, above the other children. This unjust law was now repealed, and all the members of one family were placed on an equal footing. Thus by rapid strides the government of Virginia emerged from the despotism of the British monarchy into the full, free light of constitutional freedom.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. What was now the situation of Virginia?
3. What was the action of the General Convention?
4. Who wrote the Declaration of Rights?
5. What did it lay down as a principle?
6. How had the rights of the colony been violated?

7. In view of these things what did the paper declare?
 8. What effect did this step produce?
 9. What followed the Declaration of Rights?
 10. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence?
 11. When was it adopted?
 12. What was the character of the State constitutions?
 13. Who was the first governor of Virginia?
 14. In what terms did his soldiers congratulate him?
 15. What did he answer?
 16. How did the colonies regard their situation?
 17. How was the Declaration of Independence received?
 18. Who furnished the device for the seal of Virginia?
 19. Describe it.
 20. What Church had been the established Church of Virginia, and why?
 21. What objections were now made to this?
 22. What controversies arose, and how did they end?
 23. What other English law had been in force in Virginia?
 24. What were the provisions of this law?
 25. Was it repealed?
 26. Why is it necessary for the student of Virginia history to understand these things?
-

CHAPTER XXV.

1776-1781.

TROUBLES IN THE STATE—FEARS OF A DICTATOR—LA FAYETTE AND DE KALB ARRIVE—THOMAS JEFFERSON APPOINTED GOVERNOR—BRITISH TROOPS ENTER HAMPTON ROADS—DEFEAT OF GENERAL GATES IN NORTH CAROLINA—CONVENTION TROOPS IN ALBEMARLE.

Discouragement.—Virginia, after having passed through her first difficulties, was to find by a hard and bitter experience that freedom was not to be obtained without a long struggle and many discouragements. The terrific sounds of war were now heard throughout the length and breadth of the land. Washington, struggling in vain against the disciplined troops of England, had been defeated at Long Island, and was now retreating through New Jersey and

Delaware. The enemy followed on his track marking their course with rapine and violence. Fields were wasted, cattle destroyed, and houses burned. Virginia bent beneath the blast; her Legislature seemed to lose all hope, and to look beyond their present resources for help in this bitter hour.

A Dictatorship projected.—One of the members recalled the history of Rome, who, when torn with intestine strife and deluged in blood, put a dictator at her head. Some of the Virginians who were struggling to escape from a tyrannical monarchy talked calmly of giving themselves up to a far more dangerous government, in which the entire power was to be placed in the hands of one man, to be used as he pleased. There is little doubt that Patrick Henry was the man thought of to fill the position of dictator, but it is not believed that he countenanced the idea for an instant. During the discussion in the Legislature, the feelings for and against the proposition were bitter in the extreme. The excitement became so great that opponents not only would not speak to each other, but would not even walk on the same side of the street. One of the bitterest opposers of the dictatorship was the Speaker of the House, the venerable Archibald Cary, who, meeting the brother-in-law of Patrick Henry one day, addressed him with a great deal of passion and said, "Sir, I am told that your brother wishes to be dictator; tell him for me that the day of his appointment shall be the day of his death, for he shall feel my dagger in his heart before the sunset of that day!" He was answered that Patrick Henry had never approved that or any other measures which would endanger the liberties of the country. Had he been on the spot, one word from his eloquent tongue would have brought the Assembly to its

senses: but he had been obliged by sickness to go some distance into the country, and before he returned the madness of the hour had passed away, and the project was abandoned. The next year he was re-elected governor: the manner in which he had performed the duties of the first term having more than satisfied his friends.

La Fayette and De Kalb.—This same year there passed through the State of Virginia, on their way to join the American army in the North, two young foreign noblemen. Marquis de La Fayette, a Frenchman, and Baron De Kalb, a German by birth but a brigadier-general in the French army. These distinguished men, who were about to do battle for American liberty, were received with the greatest enthusiasm by the Virginians. Their stay was brief, as they were anxious to join the army: but they were both destined to revisit Virginia, and La Fayette won most of his laurels in this State during the closing scenes of the Revolution.

The French Alliance.—For nearly three years after this time there was very little fighting in Virginia, although she took her full part in the war by her contributions of men and money. The fortunes of the united colonies during these years were at their lowest ebb. Nothing but their determination to be free, or die in the attempt, could have supported them under their dreadful discouragements. There was one gleam of light, however, in the midst of the darkness, and this was a treaty with France, by which she not only acknowledged the independence of the colonies, but promised her assistance in securing it. This was the turning-point in the history of the Revolutionary War, as it had the double effect of encouraging the Americans and of discouraging the English.

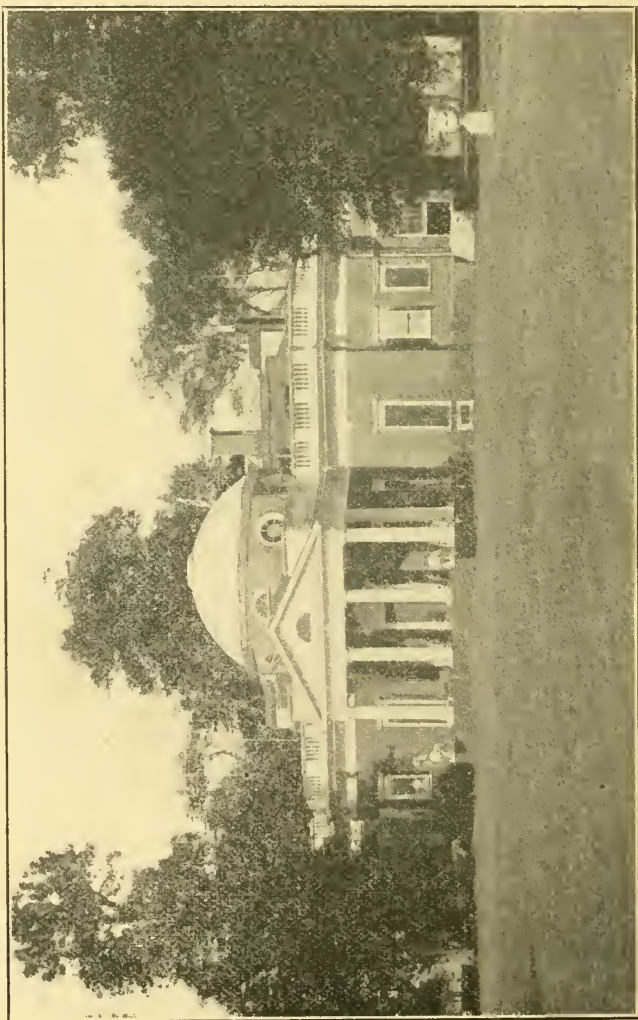
Jefferson elected Governor.—At the expiration of his second term of office as Governor of Virginia, Patrick Henry would have been re-elected by the unanimous voice of the people, as there was no one in the State who held more complete sway over the inhabitants than he; but he refused the honor, and Thomas Jefferson became Virginia's second governor.

The British Attack Virginia.—The British successes in the North were followed by still more decided victories in the South. Thus the English government began to look forward with certainty to the conquest of the entire country. Virginia was regarded as the heart of the rebellion, and the British decided to carry their victorious arms into that State, as the surest way of bringing the war to a speedy conclusion. In May of this year a fleet of armed vessels, commanded by Admiral Collins, and carrying two thousand troops, entered Hampton Roads.

The Virginians had built a fort a short distance below Portsmouth, for the defence of Norfolk and Gosport navy-yard. This fort was the first point of attack. The British fleet attacked it in front, while the land forces assaulted it in the rear. It did not hold out long. The Virginians, under Captain Matthews, having no means of defending themselves, abandoned the fort and took refuge in the Dismal Swamp. The whole country was thus left open to the British, who did not hesitate to take advantage of the opportunity. Their course was marked by devastation: they burned houses, and destroyed all the property that they could not carry away. They burned the town of Suffolk, where there were a great many stores which had been accumulated for the use of the army, and after having laid waste the whole country as far as it was possible, returned to New York.

The American Defeat at Camden.—Though this seemed to be a misfortune to Virginia, yet in the end it was not without its advantages, as for some time her attention had been so constantly directed to the main army that she had forgotten the defence of her own territory. Now, however, she saw the impolicy of this inaction, and the legislature immediately authorized the governor to call twenty thousand militia into the field, if necessary. Nor were they too early in taking these more active measures. General Gates, finding that Lord Cornwallis, the British commander, was already passing through South Carolina on his way to Virginia, determined, if possible, to intercept him. They met at Camden, South Carolina, August 16, 1780, and the Americans under Gates were totally defeated. Never did American soldiers act more disgracefully than in this battle; and I am sorry to relate that the Virginia militia were among those who ingloriously fled from the field. The brave Colonel Stephens, who commanded them, was almost maddened by their conduct; but in vain he entreated, in vain he even exerted all his personal strength to turn their bayonets again towards the enemy; they were panic-stricken, and even bore him away in their flight. It is said that this defeat was caused by a mistake of General Gates, who had, before this, been a most successful general.

The Saratoga Prisoners.—Three years before these events, while General Gates was in command of a portion of the army in the North, he met the British general Burgoyne at Saratoga, and forced him to surrender with his whole army, consisting of about six thousand men. The prisoners were at first marched to Boston. From this place they would have been sent to England on their parole, but in the meantime some dissatisfaction arose between the two governments, and it was deemed neces-



MONTICELLO, HOME OF THOMAS JEFFERSON.

sary to keep the prisoners, who were known hereafter as the Convention troops. What to do with them, however, was a serious question.

Their Removal to Charlottesville.—To maintain six thousand prisoners, in the city of Boston, was scarcely possible. Some place both secure and comfortable must be selected for them. After some time, the neighborhood of Charlottesville, Virginia, was chosen. On the top of a ridge, five miles from the town, barracks, costing about twenty thousand dollars, were built for their accommodation. To these the prisoners were transferred as rapidly as possible.

When they first arrived, considerable fear was felt that so large an increase of population could not be sustained; but such apprehensions were soon removed. The country was very productive, and the planters were glad enough to have purchasers for their crops. Soon everything assumed an air of comfort. The ground around the barracks was laid off in several hundred gardens, which the soldiers amused themselves by enclosing and cultivating. One general, a German, is said to have spent two hundred pounds in garden seeds for the use of his own troops. The officers rented houses in the neighborhood, and in many instances their families joined them. They purchased horses, cows, and sheep, and spent their time in farming. Governor Jefferson himself acted the hospitable host in devising amusements to make their captivity as pleasant as possible. His own residence was at Monticello, and here the officers would visit him; and he placed his fine library at the disposal of those who were fond of literature. Others who had a taste for music and painting found in him a cultivated companion. Thus Mr. Jefferson gained over the hearts of these enemies of his country a bloodless victory. Among his letters have been

found many from these officers expressing in warm terms their admiration for him. Years after, while passing through Germany, Mr. Jefferson was recognized by one of the soldiers who had been among these prisoners. The news spread, and he was soon surrounded by officers, who spoke of Virginia with feeling.

But captivity, even under the most favorable circumstances, is far from pleasant. Hence, notwithstanding the comforts which surrounded the prisoners, desertions became so frequent that, after they had been two years in Albemarle, it was thought necessary to remove them. Part were taken to Fort Frederick, Maryland, and the rest to Winchester.

QUESTIONS.

1. The events of what years are included in this chapter?
2. What condition had the colonies of America reached?
3. What insane idea was suggested in Virginia?
4. Who was to be chosen dictator?
5. Give an account of the strife of opinion.
6. Where was Patrick Henry during the excitement?
7. What distinguished visitors passed through Virginia?
8. Give a brief review of the history of Virginia for the next three years.
9. Who was elected the next governor of Virginia?
10. What course was the British victories assuming?
11. Tell the story of the fight near Portsmouth.
12. How did the British behave after this victory?
13. What effect did these excesses of the enemy have upon the Virginians?
14. What measures did the Legislature take?
15. Give an account of the battle of Camden.
16. Who were the Convention troops?
17. To what portion of Virginia were they transferred, and why?
18. What preparations were made for their reception?
19. How did the prisoners spend their time?
20. How did Mr. Jefferson behave to them?
21. What happened when Mr. Jefferson was afterwards travelling through Germany?
22. What became of the Convention troops?

CHAPTER XXVI.

1781.—CONTINUED.

REVOLUTIONARY WAR TRANSFERRED TO VIRGINIA — RICHMOND
ABANDONED—THE TRAITOR ARNOLD—BARON STEUBEN AND
GEORGE ROGERS CLARKE — DEATH OF DE KALB — CORNWALLIS
MARCHES TOWARD PETERSBURG—COLONEL TARLETON'S RAID.

Virginia becomes the Seat of War.—We have now reached that point in the history of Virginia when the War of the Revolution was in a great degree transferred to her soil. The beginning of this year was signalized by the princely donation which the Legislature made to the Union, which was nothing less than the huge territory northwest of the Ohio River. In 1781, Virginia agreed to cede this territory if she should be allowed to keep Kentucky. Three years later she gave it up without this condition. This great territory, from which, at the suggestion of Jefferson, slavery was excluded, embraced the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, and part of Minnesota.

Richmond threatened.—On the last day of the old year information was received that twenty-seven British ships had entered Chesapeake Bay, and were coming up towards the mouth of James River. It was much to be regretted that at this time there was no officer in Virginia to direct her military affairs; for if there had been, Richmond, the capital of Virginia, would have been rendered impregnable against assault. But General Nelson, who was in command of the Virginia forces, was striving to organize militia in the counties near the coast, and there was no other capable officer available.

The means of defence in Richmond were amply sufficient. At the foundry, about six miles from the city, there were five tons of gun powder and other military stores, and in the city there were five brass cannon and plenty of muskets. The natural situation of the city is so strong, that a few resolute men, under an efficient leader, who knew how to make use of the resources at command, could easily have defended the place. Unfortunately these were wanting, and Mr. Jefferson determined to abandon Richmond to the enemy. He ordered the five brass cannon to be thrown into the river, and set the teamsters and negroes to work loading arms and ammunition, which were driven off to Westham, seven miles from the city. Why this place should have been thought safer than Richmond is hard to understand, for if the enemy reached the city they could easily go to Westham.

The Traitor Arnold.—On the 4th of January news was received that the British had arrived at Westover. They were under the command of the wretched traitor Arnold, who had once been an officer high in rank in the American army, but who had accepted a bribe of ten thousand guineas and the rank and pay of brigadier-general in the British army to betray his country and Washington into the hands of their enemy. His plot failed, but he received his reward. This was the man who now approached the city at the head of nine hundred British soldiers. Nothing could exceed the terror and dismay all through the country when this was known. Families left their houses to the mercy of the enemy, and fled to some place of safety, out of reach of the traitor, the mere mention of whose name filled them with terror. The whole country was thus left open to a ruthless enemy, and Arnold landed his forces at Westover and marched without opposition to Richmond. On the evening of the 4th of January, 1781, the governor

left Richmond. His example was followed by most of the inhabitants, and at one o'clock the next day the infamous Arnold entered it.

Richmond at this time contained about three hundred houses, and was rapidly increasing in size and importance. Arnold at once despatched Lieutenant-Colonel Simcoe to Westham, who destroyed the foundry and military stores at that place. Two days were spent by the army in Richmond. They pillaged and destroyed public and private property: burnt buildings, broke open warehouses, and emptied them of all they contained. Some of these contained a quantity of casks of spirits. These were emptied into the streets, the liquor running down the gutters like water, and it is related that the cows and hogs drinking of it were seen staggering about the streets.

Arnold pursued.—The enemy found the five brass pieces that had been thrown into the river, which they, of course, rendered useless. After having in a few hours done all the injury possible, Arnold and his men leisurely left the city, reached their fleet, and embarked without having met with any opposition. This was a severe humiliation to the capital of the proud commonwealth, and one that was never forgotten. From this time great exertions were made to place the State in a posture of defence. Arnold did not escape, however, entirely unmolested; some of the vessels ventured up the Appomattox River, and were fiercely attacked by General Smallwood with three hundred militia, armed only with muskets, whereupon they returned precipitately to City Point. General Smallwood pursued them to this place, and having obtained two small cannon, opened fire upon the ships and drove them down the river.

Clarke's Ambush.—There was in the American army a brigadier-general named Baron Steuben, who understood

well the art of war. He had undertaken to drill the militia. With a party of these, he marched rapidly down James River, hoping to meet some of Arnold's troops, but he was disappointed, as Arnold was too quick for him. Now there was with Baron Steuben's command a heroic officer, George Rogers Clarke, who was called the "Conqueror of Illinois," as he, by almost incredible bravery and perseverance, had rescued the whole of that country from the French. He now stepped forward and entreated to be placed in command of two hundred and forty men, with whom he hoped to be able to strike a blow against the departing forces. His request was granted. Placing his men in ambush where Arnold and his troops were landing in the night, he fired into them a volley, which killed seventeen and wounded thirteen men. They were thrown into confusion, but soon recovered and returned the fire. Clarke's force was too small to make any further demonstrations, so Arnold marched on slowly towards Chesapeake Bay, destroying everything in his way except the tobacco, which he carried off with him. He was superseded in command by General Phillips, who made another expedition up the James and Appomattox Rivers, but not without opposition.

Virginia's Stubborn Resistance.—The Virginia forces, however, were not yet sufficiently organized to make a successful resistance. Baron Steuben with his militia contested the way most gallantly, but they were obliged to retreat before the enemy, who took possession of Petersburg, and burned the tobacco and some small vessels lying at the wharves. General Phillips despatched Arnold to Chesterfield Court-House, where he destroyed the barracks and burned a quantity of flour. He then rejoined Phillips, and they marched together to Manchester, which is on the opposite side of the river from Richmond, intending to

pay that city another visit. But they found this rather more difficult than they expected.

La Fayette.—You remember I told you, some time back, of two gallant noblemen who marched through Virginia to join the forces in the North. One of them, De Kalb, nearly one year before this time, had laid down his life on the fatal field of Camden; the name of the other, La Fayette, is from this period closely connected with the history of the Revolution in Virginia.



LA FAYETTE.

There is no name, except that of Washington, which is dearer to the heart of Americans than that of Marquis de La Fayette. It is hard to find terms of praise or admiration too strong for him. Born of the best blood of France, he early imbibed a love for those principles of liberty which actuated America in her struggles with England. His enthusiasm in her cause was so great that he would

have joined her in the beginning of the war but for opposition of his friends. He yielded to their opposition, until those dark days when he heard of Washington and his brave troops being driven from State to State before the victorious arms of Great Britain. Then this gallant hero determined no longer to allow himself to be controlled by others, but to link his fate, for good or ill, to that of struggling America.

The Defence of Virginia.—I have told you of the enthusiasm with which he and his companion had been received in Virginia, and this reception seems to have made a lasting impression on the young hero: for although he fought willingly by the side of Washington, he sought every opportunity to obtain a command in Virginia. At this most important juncture, Washington, who had the greatest confidence in him, placed in his charge the defence of Virginia, towards which the eyes of both armies were now turning as the future theatre of war.

Richmond saved.—La Fayette arrived in Richmond on the 29th of April. Two days afterwards Phillips and Arnold made their appearance at Manchester: but hearing that La Fayette was in command of the city, they abandoned all thought of attacking it, and marched down the river, destroying tobacco, mills, and shipping on the way. Re-embarking at a point called Bermuda Hundred, they proceeded down the river towards Chesapeake Bay: but they were not to leave Virginia so soon as they expected. While they were still sailing down the James, General Phillips received despatches from Lord Cornwallis, the British general who had defeated General Gates at Camden, telling him that he was marching with his whole force as rapidly as he could to form a junction with him at Petersburg. Phillips therefore turned back again, and on the 9th of May re-entered Petersburg.

Arnold again in command.—It was not designed by Providence, however, that General Phillips should any longer share either the triumphs or the defeats of the British army, as he died at Petersburg four days after entering it, and Arnold again assumed command. So great was the hatred of Virginians towards this man, that the governor issued a proclamation offering a reward of five thousand guineas to any one who should capture him; but the traitor, knowing his danger, never trusted himself out of his quarters without a large body-guard.

Cornwallis in Virginia.—On the 25th of April, Cornwallis marched towards Halifax, sending before him the dashing cavalry officer Colonel Tarleton, with one hundred and eighty dragoons, to scour the country in front of him. They met with no opposition, and on the 20th of May, Cornwallis united the two armies at Petersburg. A few days afterwards he crossed the James River at Westover and proceeded towards Richmond; but Arnold, who had no idea of coming within reach of the Governor of Virginia, applied for permission to return to New York. Cornwallis, glad to be relieved of the company of a man whom he despised, promptly complied with his request.

Richmond evacuated.—Exulting in the superiority of his numbers over those of La Fayette, flushed with hopes of a brilliant campaign, and confident of his triumph over the youthful officer who was opposed to him, Cornwallis wrote to England, "The boy cannot escape me." But La Fayette, though young, brave, and impetuous, had also the prudence which was requisite for his position. Although he had only about three thousand men to oppose the immense force of Cornwallis, and felt humiliated at being obliged to leave the capital of the State, his judgment nevertheless prompted him to act for the best interests of

the people whose cause he had espoused. Accordingly he evacuated Richmond, retreating in such a manner as to protect the military stores in his rear, until he was reinforced by General Wayne, who, with eight hundred of the Pennsylvania forces, was rapidly approaching from the North. Crossing the Chickahominy, he retired towards Fredericksburg, and in Culpeper County was joined by General Wayne.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. How was this year signalized?
3. What happened on the last day of the old year?
4. Under what disadvantages did Virginia labor?
5. What means of defence had Richmond?
6. What course was determined upon and adopted?
7. Who was in command of the British, and what was his story?
8. How was the news of Arnold's approach received?
9. Give an account of the evacuation of Richmond.
10. Give an account of Arnold's occupation of the city.
11. What was its effect upon the people of Virginia?
12. Did Arnold escape unmolested?
13. Who was Baron Steuben?
14. What was Colonel Clarke's history?
15. Tell of his attack on Arnold.
16. What did Arnold do afterwards?
17. Give an account of the expedition of General Phillips.
18. Of Arnold's expedition to Chesterfield Court-House.
19. What was Baron de Kalb's fate?
20. Who was La Fayette?
21. What was his course towards America?
22. What command was now conferred upon him?
23. What happened after his arrival in Richmond?
24. Give an account of the course of Phillips and Arnold.
25. How did Virginia show her abhorrence of Arnold?
26. What British general was now marching into Virginia?
27. What became of Arnold?
28. How did Cornwallis regard the situation?
29. What course did La Fayette take?

CHAPTER XXVII.

1781.—CONTINUED.

LEGISLATURE AT CHARLOTTESVILLE—ESCAPE FROM TARLETON—MONTICELLO—OUTRAGES OF THE BRITISH ARMY—CORNWALLIS RETREATS TO CHESAPEAKE BAY—HE FORTIFIES YORKTOWN—SIEGE OF YORKTOWN—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS—VIRGINIA HEROES.

Attempt to Capture the Legislature.—Lord Cornwallis, finding his young enemy too wary to be entrapped, stopped the pursuit, and encamping on the North Anna River, in Hanover County, rested until he could take a full view of the situation. A large part of the State of Virginia lay open before him. The Legislature had withdrawn from Richmond to Charlottesville, and Mr. Jefferson, whose term of service as Governor of Virginia had just expired, was at Monticello, about three miles from the village. At a place called Point-of-Fork, now Columbia, at the junction of the Rivanna and James Rivers, the Virginians had accumulated a quantity of stores, leaving Baron Steuben with only six hundred raw militia to guard them.

Cornwallis thought that if he could capture Mr. Jefferson and the Legislature at Charlottesville, and destroy the military stores at Point-of-Fork before La Fayette could interfere, he would by this double blow convince the Virginians of his power, and disgust them with a government which was too weak to protect them. Accordingly, he divided his cavalry into two parties, one of which he placed under the command of Colonel Simcoe, an officer of great activity and bravery, and the other under Colonel Tarleton. The latter with two hundred

men was to proceed to Charlottesville, and after having accomplished his object there, was to join Simcoe and aid him in destroying the stores.

Simcoe's Stratagem.—The two forces started nearly at the same time. When Simcoe reached the Point-of-Fork, he found that Baron Steuben had received notice of his approach, and had removed all the stores across the river. Seeing this, he had recourse to a stratagem which proved successful. He thought that if he could make Steuben believe that Cornwallis's whole force was with him, he would become frightened and abandon his stores. As night approached, he set his men to work to cut down timber and build camp-fires over a large extent of country. When it grew dark, Steuben, seeing the wide extent of the encampment, hastily packed up the lighter baggage and went off, leaving behind him all the heavy baggage, which Simcoe destroyed, and rejoined Cornwallis the next morning.

The Legislature warned.—Tarleton was not so successful. He dashed off through the county of Louisa towards Charlottesville, and had he gone straight forward would no doubt have accomplished his object. However, he stopped to burn twelve wagons containing clothing for the Southern army, and then visited the house of Dr. Walker, where he captured a number of gentlemen of the country. This delay caused the failure of his main object, for one of the gentlemen, guessing Tarleton's object, mounted his horse, and taking a short cut across the country, did not draw a rein until he had reached Charlottesville. Rushing into the midst of the legislative members, he announced that Tarleton was at his heels coming to capture them. They hastily adjourned to meet in Staunton on the 7th of June, and then scattered like a covey of partridges.



THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF TARLETON'S APPROACH

Jefferson's escape.—A few hours afterwards Tarleton, knowing nothing of the flight, came along at a sweeping pace, fully expecting to capture his prey, and great was his disappointment when he found the birds had flown. Before he reached Charlottesville he had detached a party under the command of Captain McLeod, with orders to

capture Mr. Jefferson. Monticello,* the residence of Mr. Jefferson, was built upon the top of a high knoll, and Tarleton was approaching by a road which wound around it. Mr. Jefferson, not dreaming of danger, was entertaining some friends, when a servant rushed in and told him that the British were coming. No time was to be lost: in a few moments the carriage was at the door, and Mrs. Jefferson and her three children were put into it and sent off by a road opposite to that by which the enemy were approaching. She took refuge at a friend's house about six miles distant; and Mr. Jefferson, mounting his horse, plunged into the recesses of the mountain, and so made his escape. It is due to Captain McLeod to say that he did not allow anything to be disturbed at Monticello, and Mr. Jefferson found all of his books, papers, and other property just as he had left them. There is still shown at Monticello a subterranean apartment, into which two negro servants of Mr. Jefferson descended by a trap-door, bearing with them the family silver, over which they kept faithful guard while Tarleton was in the house.

An Amusing Incident.—Tarleton was a great boaster, and it was an intense mortification to him to be obliged to return to Cornwallis with the few prisoners, for whose capture he had sacrificed the main object of the expedition. He allowed his men to pillage the country, and incidents of his progress are still preserved among the descendants of those who suffered from the license of his soldiery. At one house everything, in the way of poultry, was taken off except one old drake. The family still display a picture in which the angry housewife is sending this sole denizen of her poultry-yard after Tarleton as a present from her, as she had no use for it.

*Monticello, the Italian for little mountain.

Depredations of Cornwallis.—Meanwhile, Cornwallis, advancing from the North Anna River, took possession of one of Mr. Jefferson's farms, called Elk Hill, slaughtered and drove off the cattle, appropriated the horses which were fit for use, and with wanton cruelty cut the throats of all that were too young for service. Thirty thousand slaves, also, are supposed to have been carried off from the country, of whom twenty-seven thousand died of small-pox and other diseases in the course of six months. Altogether, property amounting to six millions of pounds sterling was either taken away or destroyed.

La Fayette's Vigilance.—But Cornwallis's reign of terror was nearly over. A fearful retribution awaited him. He had received information of a quantity of military property which was stored at Albemarle Old Court-House (now Scottsville). These he determined to destroy; but he was no longer to mark his course through Virginia with fire and sword without meeting an arm of defence raised against him, for the brave La Fayette was ready for him: he had been watching with an eagle eye his every movement, and now the time for action had arrived. Reinforced and in command of an ample body of troops, he moved cautiously from Culpeper to Boswell's Tavern, near the Albemarle line. Cornwallis was between him and Albemarle Old Court-House, where the stores were; there was but one way in which he could intercept him, and this La Fayette took. He set all of his men to work to open a road across the country, and next morning Cornwallis saw, with astonishment and rage, the Americans encamped in an impregnable position, just between him and Albemarle Old Court-House. At the same time he received a despatch from Sir Henry Clinton, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, ordering him to proceed at once to the sea-coast and to send him all the men he could

spare, as there was reason to believe that New York would be the next point of attack.

A Perilous Error.—Cornwallis without delay set his face towards the sea, and now he was the pursued and La Fayette the pursuer. Cornwallis moved slowly, and La Fayette watched keenly every step he took. Once, and only once, was La Fayette off his guard: but happily his want of vigilance was not attended with serious consequences. On the 4th day of July, Cornwallis was preparing to transport his entire army across James River, having selected Jamestown Island as the proper point. Inexperienced spies had informed La Fayette that the British army had crossed, leaving the rear-guard on the north side of the river. This he determined to attack, and did not discover his mistake until he had driven in the pickets and found himself in the midst of the full stretch of the British army. Two field-pieces were captured, and had it not been for the darkness of the night, which enabled La Fayette to accomplish a retreat, the Americans must have been disastrously routed. As it was, there was little real damage done, and Cornwallis withdrew his forces across the river and continued his course towards Chesapeake Bay, followed by La Fayette. He soon received despatches from Sir Henry Clinton, informing him that New York was not to be attacked, and ordering him to retain his whole force in Virginia, selecting Yorktown as his base of operation. Of this place he took possession, and threw up intrenchments.

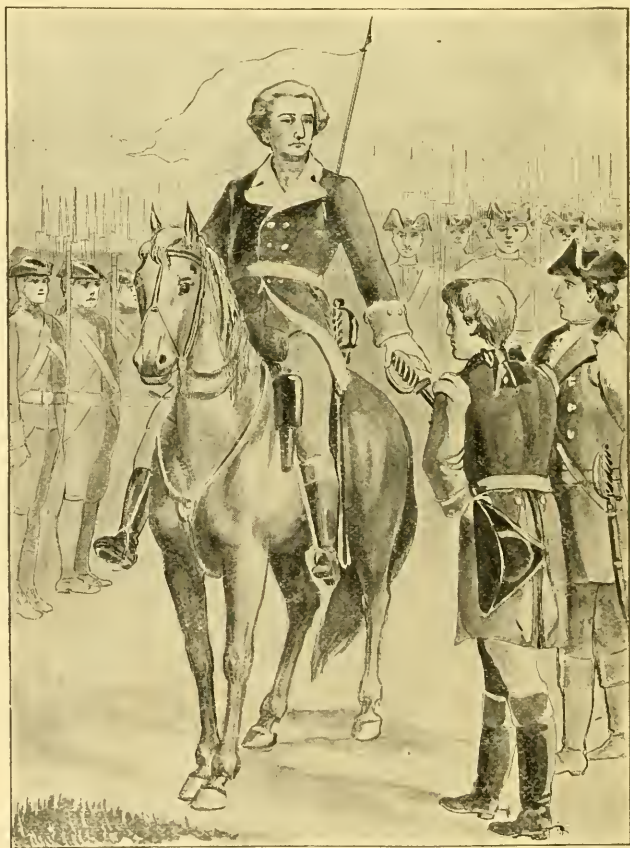
Washington joins La Fayette.—La Fayette saw at a glance the advantages of the situation, and lost no time in informing Washington. Thereupon Washington turned his face without delay towards Virginia, and with his combined French and American troops was far on his southward march before the British general had any idea of

the contemplated movement. Before Washington joined La Fayette, he had learned with joy that Count de Grasse had entered Chesapeake Bay with a fleet of twenty-five ships, on board of which were three thousand French troops. It was near the last of September when Washington joined La Fayette and immediately mounted cannon around Yorktown, which was soon, with the aid of the ships of De Grasse, completely invested, and the proud Cornwallis saw himself caught in a trap of his own setting, while the Americans determined that he and his army should never leave Yorktown except as prisoners of war.

Cornwallis entrapped.—General Washington knew that as soon as Sir Henry Clinton heard of the situation of Cornwallis he would make every effort to relieve him: his aim therefore was to prepare for a defence from an outside attack, as well as to secure the army in Yorktown. Cornwallis on his part was not idle, but strove in every way to escape from his precarious situation; but day by day his hopes grew fainter, until at length they rested alone upon the anticipated help from Sir Henry Clinton. After a while food became scarce, and still the Americans built their intrenchments closer and closer to the fated city. General Nelson, who was now Governor of Virginia, had his home in Yorktown. Observing, one day, that in compliment to him the gunners would not aim at his house while firing into the town, though it was known to be the headquarters of the British officers, he remonstrated, and insisted that the guns should open fire in that direction. His wish was complied with: the first shot killed two officers, and the entire building was soon demolished.

Escape prevented.—Aware of his desperate situation, and beginning to despair of help from without, Cornwallis made an attempt to cut his way through the American lines, but he was driven back. He then determined to

abandon his sick and wounded and his materials of war, and to escape with his men across the river. The boats



SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS.

were in readiness, and some of the troops had actually embarked: but a storm of wind and rain arose which drove the boats back on the shore, and the attempt was abandoned.

The Surrender of Cornwallis.—The hopes of Lord Cornwallis were now at an end, and unwilling to sacrifice any more of the troops who had so bravely stood the horrors of the siege, on the morning of the 17th of October he despatched a flag of truce with a letter to General Washington, proposing a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours, in order that the terms of surrender might be settled. Washington, fearing that reinforcements might arrive from New York and change the aspect of affairs, declined a longer delay than two hours. With this Cornwallis was forced to be satisfied, though two days elapsed before all of the preliminaries were settled, and at twelve o'clock on the 19th of October the surrender was made. The allied armies were drawn up in two lines more than a mile in length, the French on one side of the road and the Americans on the other. The Count de Rochambeau and his staff, handsomely mounted, occupied a position in front of the French, and Washington on a noble steed, with his staff, was beside the Americans. The French presented a brilliant appearance in their complete uniforms, and marched to the field with a band of music in full play. The Americans, in spite of their shabby dress, which bore the marks of hard service and great privations, wore a proud, soldierly air which was better than mere outside adornment.

The British Garrison.—About two o'clock the British garrison sallied forth from Yorktown and passed through the two lines of their conquerors. They marched with slow, sad steps, their arms shouldered, their flags furled, and their drums beating a solemn march. They were led by General O'Hara, who at once marched up to Washington and apologized for the non-appearance of Lord Cornwallis on account of sickness. He then led his men forward to the field where they were to ground their arms.

Their aspect as they followed their leader was sullen, which was very natural under the circumstances.

Their Humiliation.—The British had shown such contempt for their American foe that they were keenly humiliated by this overwhelming defeat. Many of the men threw their muskets violently on the pile, as if unable to conceal their rage; and Colonel Abercrombie, one of the officers, as he stood by, compelled to witness the sight, bit the hilt of his sword, and turned away his head as if completely overcome. In 1881 the centennial of this victory was celebrated with great splendor at Yorktown.

Importance of the Surrender.—The surrender of Cornwallis not only enriched America by the capture of men, guns, stores, ammunition, and ships, but it produced the happiest moral effect. Those who were disposed, through discouragement, to abandon the cause, soon became its most earnest supporters. Enthusiasm prevailed everywhere, and Great Britain, seeing that her strength was being wasted on a people determined to be free, abandoned the contest. Peace was not formally declared for nearly two years afterwards, but the independence of the republic was recognized, and the new country invited to trade, on equal terms, with the power that had ruled over her.

Virginia's Roll of Honor.—Thus ended the War of the Revolution, and Virginia may well be proud of her part in the struggle. On her soil the seeds of independence were sown, and on her soil the last great battle was fought. Her sons were always foremost in the field and the council-chamber. The voice of Patrick Henry was the first to sound the cry of liberty; George Mason penned the Declaration of Rights, and Thomas Jefferson the Declaration of Independence; and George Washington, preëminent in all the noble qualities of man and soldier, kept

alive the courage of his countrymen in the darkest hour, and led the American army to final triumph. Nor does the list of Virginia's heroes end here, for there are William Washington,* Lee,† Mereer, Morgan, Stephen, and Clarke among her soldiers, and Mason, Page, Nelson, Richard Henry Lee, Randolph, Bland, Pendleton, and Wythe among her statesmen—an honor roll of which the State may well be proud.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. What was the next step of Lord Cornwallis?
3. Where were the Legislature and Mr. Jefferson?
4. Where was Baron Steuben?
5. What did Cornwallis propose to do?
6. What part of the plan was given to Simcoe, and how did he accomplish his object?
7. What work was assigned to Tarleton?
8. What caused the failure of his object?
9. Relate the story of his raid upon Charlottesville.
10. How did the Legislature escape?
11. The command of what enterprise did McLeod undertake?
12. Was he successful?
13. How did Tarleton behave under disappointment?
14. Give an account of Cornwallis's reign of terror.
15. Who was waiting to oppose him?
16. What piece of military strategy did La Fayette accomplish?
17. What happened to change Cornwallis's plans?
18. What course did he pursue?
19. Describe the retreat of his army to Yorktown.
20. What did Washington do when he heard the news?
21. What was the situation of the two armies?
22. What was Cornwallis's only hope?
23. What did General Nelson do?
24. Tell of Cornwallis's attempt to escape.
25. What proposals did Cornwallis make, and how were they received?
26. Describe the manner in which the allied armies were drawn up at the time of surrender.
27. Give an account of the surrender.
28. What was the importance of this surrender?
29. What part had Virginia taken in the Revolution?
30. Give the names of some of her Revolutionary soldiers and statesmen.

*Lieutenant-Colonel William Washington, a cavalry leader.

†"Light-Horse Harry," father of General Robert E. Lee.

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PERIOD II: VIRGINIA DURING
THE REVOLUTION, 1775-1783.

1. Where and when was the first battle of the Revolution fought?
2. What action did Lord Dunmore take when he heard of this battle?
3. What was the attitude of the House of Burgesses at this time?
4. What plot of Lord Dunmore against the Burgesses was discovered?
5. How did this discovery affect the Virginians?
6. Give an account of the battle of Hampton.
7. Give an account of further troubles with Lord Dunmore and of his final repulse.
8. What did the Williamsburg Convention, May, 1776, do?
9. Who wrote the Declaration of Rights, and what were its chief provisions?
10. Date and author of the Declaration of Independence.
11. Who was Virginia's first governor?
12. What noteworthy things had he done before his election?
13. Explain the Seal of Virginia.
14. Who were the Dissenters, what had been the laws against them,
• and what was now done for them?
15. Explain the law of primogeniture.
16. What are its advantages and disadvantages?
17. What progress does the repeal of this law and of law against
Dissenters indicate?
18. For the next three years what was the condition of Virginia?
19. What strange proposal was made about a dictatorship?
20. What were some of the most important events happening outside
of Virginia 1776-1779?
21. Who was Virginia's second governor?
22. Tell the story of the Saratoga prisoners.
23. Give an account of Arnold's proceedings in Virginia.
24. What distinguished Frenchman was aiding Virginia at this time?
25. What were Lord Cornwallis's plans in regard to Virginia?
26. Why did he fail in regard to the Virginia Legislature?
27. Give an account of the surrender of the British at Yorktown.
28. Mention some of Virginia's great men of the Revolutionary Period.

PERIOD III: VIRGINIA FROM 1783-1865.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

1781-1800.

"CRAZY RUMSEY"—WASHINGTON AT MOUNT VERNON—CONVENTION AT PHILADELPHIA—VIRGINIA CONVENTION MEETS TO DISCUSS THE NEW CONSTITUTION—VIRGINIA JOINS THE FEDERAL UNION—WASHINGTON ELECTED PRESIDENT—KENTUCKY ADMITTED INTO THE UNION—FEDERALISTS AND REPUBLICANS—ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS—"RESOLUTIONS OF '98"—PATRICK HENRY'S LAST SPEECH—JOHN RANDOLPH OF ROANOKE—DEATHS OF PATRICK HENRY AND WASHINGTON.

A Virginian's Invention.—It is pleasant to turn aside for a moment from the turmoil of war and the difficulties that beset the ship of state to tell the simple story of a man whose name deserves a higher place than it at present occupies in history. There has been a great deal written about the invention of the steam-engine. We are so accustomed to see it in common use that but few of us realize how wonderful was the genius which first conceived the idea of using steam as a locomotive power. There are records as far back as the year 1543 of the conception of some such idea, but no one had ever been able to put it into execution.

James Rumsey was a native of Maryland, and had his residence at Bath, Morgan County, Virginia, and afterwards in Shepherdstown. He was employed by the Potomac Company to improve the navigation of the Potomac River, and here his attention became directed to different modes of propelling vessels, and particularly to utilizing steam for this purpose. He was a simple man, but one of considerable inventive powers and great earnestness of pur-

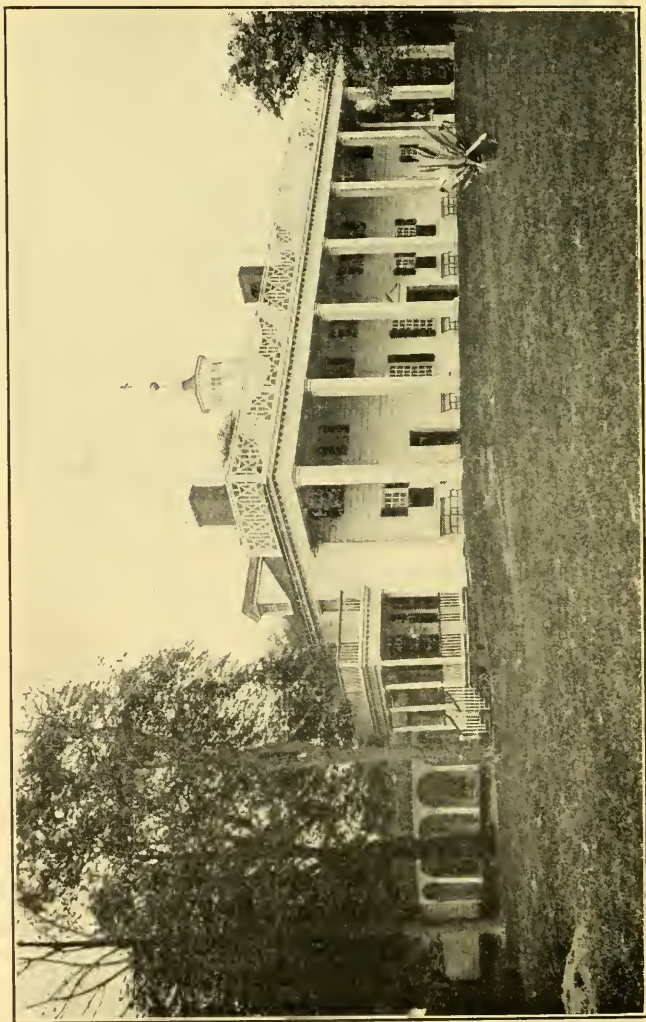
pose. In spite of the ridicule of his ignorant neighbors, who dubbed him "Crazy Rumsey," he built a boat on the banks of the Potomac, and succeeded in launching it upon the waters of that river, propelling it by steam against the current at the rate of four or five miles an hour. This seems very slow to us, but it was considered wonderful speed by the people of the country, who called it the "flying boat." It was about fifty feet long, and the whole machinery did not occupy more than six feet square. The boiler held about five gallons of water, only a pint of which was required at a time, and it used from four to six bushels of coal in twelve hours. Rumsey was working at his idea nearly four years before he developed it; and there is a path along the banks of the Potomac, near Shepherdstown, which was called Rumsey's Walk, because here the poor fellow walked up and down, day after day, meditating upon his project.

The Trial Trip.—At length the "flying boat" was ready for its trial trip, and among other distinguished persons who were on board, upon this its first voyage, was General Washington himself, who was convinced of the utility of the idea, and gave his certificate to that effect.

Death of the Inventor.—Thus encouraged, Rumsey resolved to go to England for the purpose of obtaining skilful workmen and such machinery for the carrying out of his plans as he could not obtain in this country. But here the difficulty beset him which so often lies in the way of great projects,—want of money. He was obliged to abandon his main scheme and turn his attention to something else until he could raise the means to resume it. He even sacrificed a large interest in his invention in order to escape a London prison. Still he struggled on, finally completing a boat of about one hundred tons' burthen, and named a day for its public

exhibition. The evening before this, he intended to devote to an explanation of his project, in order that he might get aid from the public. The evening arrived, and, to poor Rumsey's astonishment, the hall was filled to overflowing with the learning, fashion, and beauty of Liverpool. He was perfectly overwhelmed with the sudden prospect of seeing the fulfilment of his dearest hopes. When he arose to begin his lecture, he was so overcome that he could not control his feelings. A gentleman nearby, observing his agitation, handed him a glass of water. He thanked him incoherently, sank into his chair, and never spoke again. He died two days afterwards, leaving his project to be completed by others. Nearly twenty years later, Fulton succeeded in improving upon his idea, and is recognized as the great master of steam navigation, while poor Rumsey fills an unhonored grave.

Forming a Government.—Though the sword was laid aside, an arduous task lay before the country, for she now had to take her place in the family of nations, and prepare herself to support that position with honor. A monarchical form of government, that is one in which the king is the chief ruler, had not satisfied them; they determined to make an experiment which had never yet been quite successful in the history of the world,—namely, to have a government in which all of the officers were to be elected by the people, and no office to be held for life. Thus if the chief ruler did not prove to be a good one, his government could not be a lasting evil, for in a short time another election would take place, and another man would fill the position. Each State was to have a government of its own, consisting of a governor, judiciary, and legislature, which would render it entirely independent of the others. There was to be a general government, in which

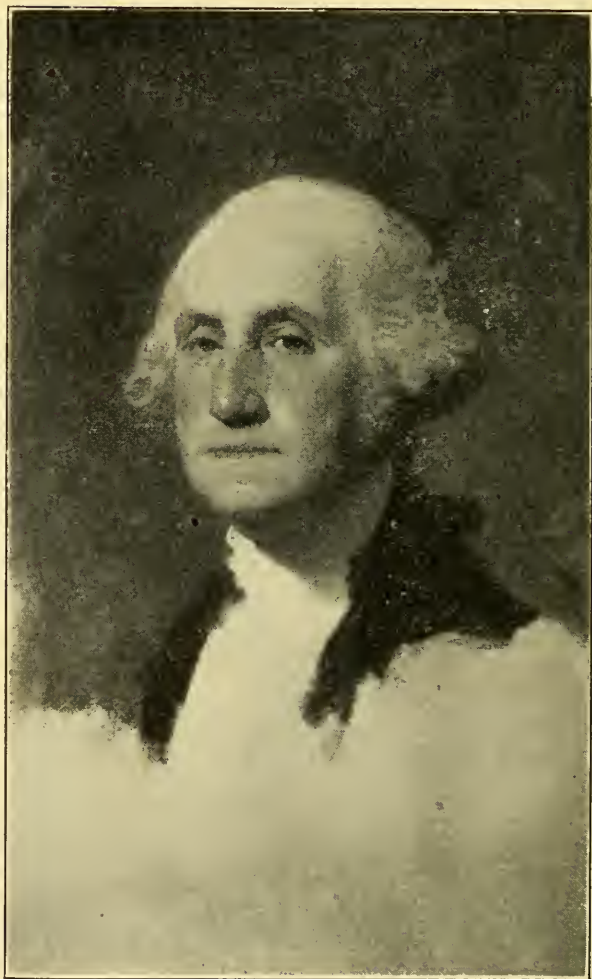


MOUNT VERNON, HOME OF GEORGE WASHINGTON.

all should unite, consisting of President, Congress, and Supreme Court. There were at that time thirteen different States, but it was agreed that each new State which was formed should join the Union subject to the same regulations as the original thirteen. In the year 1784 Virginia, as we have seen, gave to the United States her great territories in the Northwest, out of which were afterwards formed the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, and a part of Minnesota. For many years, however, it was not divided, but was known as "the Territory of Indiana."

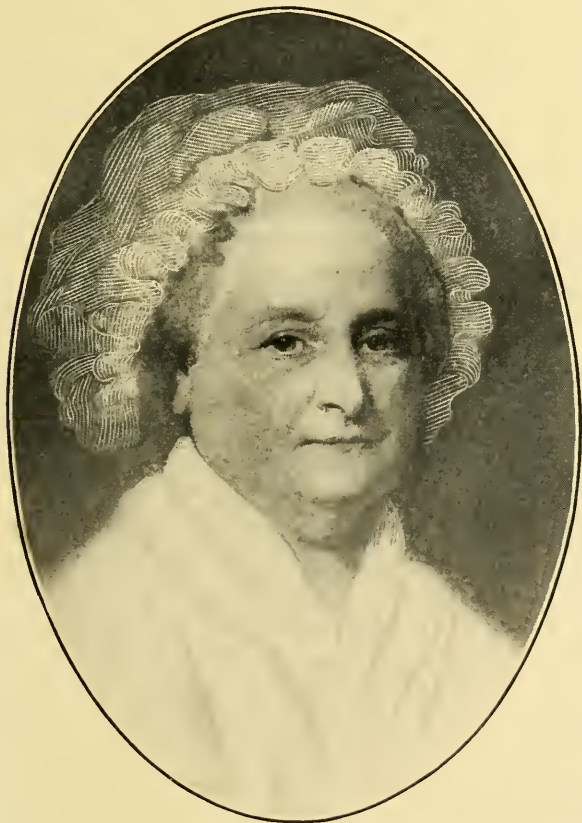
Washington retires.—The subject which first engaged the attention of all was how the two governments, state and national, should be constituted, so that the one should not interfere with the other. This was an undertaking full of difficulty. The States had adopted their own forms of government, and they were not prepared to surrender their power entirely into the hands of the United States. General Washington, when peace was fully established, had taken a final leave of the officers and soldiers of the army which had so long acknowledged him as their leader, and at a meeting of Congress had surrendered his commission as commander-in-chief. After this he retired to Mount Vernon and engaged in domestic pursuits, but never for an instant did he lose sight of what he considered the best interests of the United States, and he keenly shared in the anxiety for the adoption of such a constitution as would promote this object.

The Constitutional Convention.—Years passed away before the matter was definitely settled. In May, 1787, a convention met at Philadelphia, and a constitution or code of laws was prepared, which was presented to each of the different States for their discussion in convention. In Virginia this produced the greatest excitement. Nothing was



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

talked of but the new Constitution and the election of members to the Convention which met at Richmond on the 2d of June of the following year, 1788.



MARTHA WASHINGTON.

Virginia's Action.—Never before or since, in the history of the State, had there been such an array of talent and

patriotism as met on that occasion. Of course Patrick Henry was there, and Pendleton and Wythe, Lee and Randolph, Madison and Marshall, and many others, all of whom came to the Convention with the love of their State as the ruling passion of their hearts, though they differed widely as to the means of securing her best interests. Patrick Henry opposed the new Constitution with all the power of his great eloquence; he thought that Virginia ought not to give the general government so much power over her. Mr. Madison and Mr. Randolph and others opposed him. They thought that Virginia did not give away any power necessary to the existence of her State government, and that she would be strengthened by a federal union with her sister States. The result of many stormy discussions was the adoption of the Constitution by a majority of only ten votes. By this action Virginia became a member of the Union and her history is linked with that of her sister States. But as this is a history of Virginia we shall confine ourselves, as far as possible, to topics exclusively connected with the State.

Washington elected President.—The year after the adoption of the Constitution, George Washington was elected to fill the office of President of the United States. He had been a great advocate of the Union, and President of the Convention which met at Philadelphia to frame the Constitution, but it was with the greatest reluctance that he accepted the post of Chief Magistrate of the new country. He was growing old, was wearied with the life of toil which he had led, and only desired to spend the evening of his days in the quiet of his home at Mount Vernon. But he could not decline the call from the country of which he was the father, and so became the first President of the United States, while Patrick Henry was elected Governor of Virginia.

Kentucky admitted.—One of the first acts of the new government was the admission of a new State to the Union. This was Kentucky, a young daughter of whom Virginia was justly proud. Twenty years before the period at which we have now arrived, the whole of this beautiful land was in possession of the Indians; but after a terrible struggle, it was rescued from the savages. As years passed away, the fertility of the soil and the healthfulness of the climate invited settlers, and Kentucky was soon known as “the Garden of the West.” Each year marked her progress in strength and vigor, until she was ready to take her place with her sisters as a State of the Union, which she did with honor and credit in the year 1792.

Political Parties.—About this time arose two great political parties in the country, which were known by the titles of “Federalist” and “Republican.” The Federalists were those who approved of a strong central government, and thought it ought to be powerful enough to keep in check the State governments. The Republicans, on the contrary, looked with great jealousy and distrust upon the power already granted to the general government by the new Constitution, and zealously contended for the right of the different States to govern themselves. This last party was the strongest in Virginia.

Measures of State Defence.—As the Republican party was the strongest in Virginia, the Legislature of the State adopted every means to strengthen the State government by increasing her means of defence. Laws were passed for arming the militia, and an armory was built at Richmond large enough to store away ten thousand stand of arms; two hundred and twelve pieces of cannon were mounted around the yard, besides six beautiful brass siege-pieces and two mortars. These last were supposed to have been brought

over in a French vessel during the siege of Yorktown, and were presented, after the fall of Cornwallis, to the Commonwealth of Virginia.

Alien and Sedition Laws.—This same year (1798) events occurred which made the opposition between the two great political parties of the country more bitter than ever. Some laws were passed by the United States styled the “Alien and Sedition Laws.” The first named gave the President the power to send any foreigner out of the country whom he regarded as dangerous to the peace of the United States; and if he remained in the country after the order to leave had been issued, he was to be imprisoned for a term not exceeding three years. The “Sedition Law” empowered the government to seize any one who should write, speak, or publish anything false, scandalous, or malicious against the government, Congress, or President of the United States, and subjected the offender to fine and imprisonment.

Their Reception.—When it became known that these two laws had been passed, the greatest excitement prevailed throughout the country. The Federalists contended that it was right and necessary that the general government should thus act; and the Republicans said that these placed too much power in the hands of the President and Congress, and would be sure to lead to tyranny, by bringing under punishment many who were only suspected, and who ought to be tried before condemnation. Besides, they restricted the “liberty of the press,” by forbidding the publication of opinions.

In Virginia the feelings of these two parties were particularly bitter, and the discussions in the Legislature were stormy, a great deal of talent and eloquence being arrayed on both sides. Patrick Henry had opposed the

adoption of the Constitution, but as Virginia had agreed to bind herself to the Union he thought her best interests lay in doing everything to strengthen the tie. Mr. Madison drew up some resolutions, which have ever since been celebrated as the "Resolutions of '98." These, full of patriotism both to the United States government and to the State, declared the intention of Virginia to maintain and defend the Constitution of the United States against all opposition. At the same time they avowed her purpose to oppose anything that went beyond this Constitution and endangered the liberty of individuals and of the States. These resolutions also declared that it was especially necessary to guard the liberty of the press and of conscience. The Alien and Sedition Laws were declared to be aimed against such rights, and therefore were opposed. Even before this action by Virginia, Kentucky had passed resolutions written by Thomas Jefferson which were even stronger than those passed by Virginia. These were the only two States that openly opposed the action of the Federal government.

Patrick Henry's Last Speech.—Patrick Henry, though a very old and feeble man, allowed himself to be brought before the people of Charlotte County as a candidate for the Virginia Senate, in order that he might once again raise his voice for what he considered the best interests of his beloved State. Before his election, a day was appointed for him to make a speech to the people of Charlotte Court-House, in order that he might tell them what course he intended to pursue should they elect him to the Legislature of Virginia. He mounted the stand fixed for him, and the tears gathered in many eyes as they saw the sad change wrought by years and ill health upon his honored form. But soon his eye lighted up, and his voice uttered

such eloquent words as none had ever heard from him before. He said he had opposed the adoption of the Constitution, and the Alien and Sedition Laws were but the fruits he had expected; but it was too late for Virginia to set herself against the government. Then clasping his hands, and waving his body backward and forward, he said, "If we are wrong, let us all go wrong together." The audience was so excited that the entire mass of people *waved* with him, and as he fell exhausted into the arms of the crowd, a friend exclaimed, "The sun has set in all his glory!"

John Randolph.—The applause over Patrick Henry's speech was still at its height when a young figure, of ungainly and unprepossessing appearance, stepped forward and took his place upon the stand which the great orator had just left. Every one looked in amazement as they recognized John Randolph, who had grown up in the county, and now presented himself as a candidate for the Congress of the United States. Many laughed at the temerity of the daring youth who thus made his appearance after Mr. Henry, and one old man said, "Tut! tut! it won't do. It's nothing but the beating of an old tin pan after hearing a fine church organ." But they soon found that the tin pan sounded notes which claimed their attention. Patrick Henry's sun had set, but here was another rising, the herald of a bright day. John Randolph afterwards became the most celebrated orator, next to Patrick Henry, in the history of the State.

Both candidates were elected, Mr. Henry to the Virginia Legislature and Mr. Randolph to Congress. Patrick Henry did not live to take his seat, as he died on the 16th of June, 1799, mourned by all; for he was not only a great orator and a great patriot, but a loving-hearted Christian gentleman.

Death of Washington.—December the 14th, 1799, George Washington, the most distinguished of all the sons of Virginia, died at Mount Vernon. This event plunged the whole country in mourning. Upon hearing the sad news, Congress adjourned, after resolving that all of the members should wear érape during the session, and that a committee be appointed to consider the best means of honoring the man who was “first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.”* Every State in the Union hastened to take steps to testify its grief at this public bereavement. Nor was the recognition of the sad event confined to America. When the news reached Europe, Bonaparte, First Consul of France, issued an order that black érape should be suspended from all of the standards and flags in the army of France for ten days. Even the English government honored the man who had fought against her, for sixty ships lying at Torbay lowered their flags to half-mast at the reception of the news. Throughout America, passion was calmed and party spirit extinguished, while all mourned Washington as the “Father of his Country.”

QUESTIONS.

1. The history of what years is included in this chapter?
2. For what purpose does our history turn aside from the difficulties which beset Virginia?
3. What about the invention of the steam-engine?
4. Who was James Rumsey?
5. What first turned his thoughts to making use of steam?
6. How was his idea looked upon?
7. What success did he meet with?
8. Tell of the launching and trial trip of the “flying boat.”
9. Tell of Rumsey’s trip to England.
10. What difficulties did he encounter?

*The resolution adopted by Congress ran “first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his fellow-citizens.”

11. What is the end of his story?
12. What was the condition of Virginia?
13. What duties lay before her?
14. What kind of government was determined upon?
15. What was the general government?
16. What the State government?
17. What had Washington done when peace was declared?
18. When and where did the Convention meet, and what did it accomplish?
19. What was the effect of these events upon Virginia?
20. When and where did her Convention meet, and what great men were there?
21. What difference of opinion existed among these patriots?
22. What was the result of these discussions?
23. How has Virginia heretofore been presented to you, and what change now becomes necessary?
24. Who was the first President of the United States, and how did he regard the honor?
25. Who was elected Governor of Virginia?
26. What of Kentucky?
27. When was she admitted as a State?
28. Who were the Federalists and the Republicans?
29. What is said of the political feeling?
30. What laws were passed in 1798?
31. What was the Alien Law?
32. What was the Sedition Law?
33. What was their effect upon the different States?
34. How did Virginia receive them?
35. What position did Patrick Henry occupy?
36. Who drew up the "Resolutions of '98?"
37. What did they declare?
38. What had Kentucky done?
39. For what position did Patrick Henry become a candidate?
40. Tell of his last appearance before the people.
41. How did he close his speech, and with what effect?
42. Who occupied the stand after Patrick Henry?
43. Who was he, and how was he received?
44. What reputation did he afterwards gain?
45. What success did the two candidates meet with?
46. Where and when did Patrick Henry die?
47. What sad event happened near the close of this same year?
48. What was the effect upon the whole country?
49. How was the event recognized in Europe?

CHAPTER XXIX.

1800-1813.

CALLENDER'S "PROSPECT BEFORE US"—INSURRECTION OF SLAVES—
BURNING OF THE RICHMOND THEATRE—WAR OF 1812.

Party Spirit.—The mourning for George Washington and Patrick Henry was quickly followed by a revival of party spirit, due to the enforcement of the Sedition Law in Virginia.

One James Thompson Callender, a foreigner, who had his home in Virginia, published a pamphlet called "The Prospect Before Us," in which he took occasion, in the most outrageous manner, to load with coarse abuse and false accusations not only Mr. Adams, the President of the United States, but even the lamented Washington. So infamous was this paper that the public indignation was aroused. Judge Chase, who had been one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and was now one of the judges of the Supreme Court, read the pamphlet, and declared his intention of taking it with him to Virginia,—where he was soon to hold a circuit court,—and that if a jury of honest men could be found in the commonwealth, he would punish Callender. He did so; and presenting the pamphlet to the grand jury, insisted upon the arrest of Callender as a "seditious libeller." This was done; and very much frightened at "the prospect before" him, Callender was brought before the court. Three celebrated Virginia lawyers undertook his defence. They were Mr. Wirt, Mr. Hay, and Mr. Philip Norborne Nicholas. Judge Chase, in his anxiety to enforce the law, showed a

little too much ardor, as he refused to grant the counsel of Callender a longer time to summon witnesses, and in the end so offended the three gentlemen that they left the court. Callender was condemned; and so great was the disgust of all parties for his pamphlet, that although the proceeding was contrary to the ideas of Virginians in regard to liberty of opinion, no one was sorry that he suffered fine and imprisonment.

Judge Chase was afterwards brought before the bar of Congress for his action in this case and others, and John Randolph was very earnest in his efforts to have him impeached. The trial was a long one and full of interest, but he was cleared March 1st, 1805, of all the charges brought against him.

An attempted Slave Insurrection.—In the year 1800 the State of Virginia was startled by the discovery of an intended insurrection of slaves. In 1619, a Dutch vessel brought to the young colony a cargo of Africans, who were used as slaves. For many years English ships continued the practice thus introduced, until they became very numerous in the different colonies, especially in the South. During the Revolutionary War, Virginia made a law that no more Africans should be brought into the State. Still she was obliged to care for those who were already there. Generally speaking, the negroes proved a harmless and affectionate race, easily governed, and happy in their condition; and history records but two attempted insurrections in Virginia during the existence of the institution. The first happened in the neighborhood of Richmond.

It was headed by a man named Gabriel, and about one thousand negroes were concerned in it. So well was their secret kept, that not a suspicion of it existed until the very night appointed for the execution of the plot. It was then divulged by a slave named Pharaoh. His

heart failed him at the last moment, and making his escape, he presented himself before the authorities at Richmond and disclosed the whole plot. Steps were instantly taken to defeat it; and it was found that an organized plan had been laid to surprise Richmond, exterminate the male inhabitants, and take the women for wives for themselves. The conspirators were convicted and condemned to meet the fate they so justly deserved.

The Nat Turner Massacre.—Though it does not properly belong to this period, as it happened thirty years after, I will tell you, in connection with this incident, of the only other insurrection which soils the fair page of the history of Virginia. It was headed by a negro named Nat Turner, a religious fanatic and a preacher. He also claimed to be a prophet, and by the interpretation of some signs obtained a great influence among the ignorant, superstitious negroes. By this means he succeeded in inducing numbers to join him in his plot. On the 21st of August, 1831, accompanied by twenty of his followers, he entered the house of his master, one Mr. Travis, in Southampton County, during the night, and murdered the entire family before they were sufficiently awake to offer defence. He next went to the house of a Mr. Waller, and left his wife and ten children a bleeding heap on the floor. Near by this last-named place there was a school of little girls, all of whom were butchered in cold blood except one, who made her escape and was found by her friends hidden in a hedge. In giving an account of the horrors through which she had passed, the little thing said, "but God watched over me."

Retribution.—For one entire day did these wretches revel in blood. Fortunately, their courage was not proof against resistance, and this they encountered at the house of Dr. Blount. That gentleman, his son, a youth of fifteen, and three white neighbors were on the lookout

for the negroes, and when they came within twenty yards of the house, opened fire upon them from the windows. One of the negroes fell dead, a second was wounded, and the rest betook themselves to flight. From this time the warfare was at an end. The whites turned out and hunted the murderers down through the swamps. The first captives were killed on the spot, but when the heat of passion had cooled, justice resumed her sway, and they were taken to the county town of Southampton and tried for their crimes. It was some weeks before Nat Turner was found, but at length he was discovered under a pile of fence-rails, and, being brought to trial, was hanged.

A Terrible Event.—In the year 1811, the city of Richmond was the scene of a disaster even more terrible than the slave insurrection. The prosperity of the State, after the Revolutionary War, was steadily progressive; her wealth and population had greatly increased. Richmond, at the time it was chosen as the capital of the commonwealth, was but a village. It had now spread its boundaries over the neighboring hills, and was the centre of wealth, fashion, and gayety. During the memorable winter of this year, the young, the gay, and the beautiful had flocked to the city. Brilliant entertainments followed each other in rapid succession, and night after night crowds gathered at the theatre, where the best actors in the country were performing.

On the evening of the 26th of December an immense crowd assembled to witness a favorite play, in which the principal character was sustained by a very celebrated actor. While every eye was fixed upon the performers, and the interest was at its height, sparks of fire were seen to fall from the scenery at the back of the stage, and at the same moment one of the actors rushed forward and, throwing up his hands excitedly, exclaimed, "The house is

on fire! the house is on fire!" Instantly the cry of horror was repeated through the building in various accents of terror and despair, and a scene of confusion followed which language is inadequate to describe. The crowd trod upon each other in their efforts to reach the doors, which they found tightly closed, as they unfortunately opened on the inside of the room, and the pressure against them only kept them more tightly barred. Behind, the flames gained ground, and the suffocating smoke spread over the doomed mass of human beings like a pall. Strong men, frantic with fear, passed over the heads of the dense crowd in their efforts to reach the doors: the groans of the crushed and dying mingled with the labored respiration of those who were smothered by the smoke. Many threw themselves from the upper windows, exchanging one violent death for another.

Affecting Scenes.—In the midst of the wild tumult, touching instances are narrated where love triumphed over the fear of death. Parents rushed back into the flames to rescue their children, and perished in the attempt; and children refused to be saved at the expense of a parent's life. Husbands and wives chose death together rather than separation. One old lady tells with the eloquence of an eye-witness of her own rescue by one who afterwards became her husband. With admirable presence of mind, he bore her to an upper window, and fastening his foot in some way in the shutter let her down as far as his arms could reach, and dropped her into those of the watching crowd below. When her safety was assured, he saved himself by climbing down one of the pillars. Seventy persons lost their lives on this eventful night, and this number comprised the wealth, the fashion, and the talent of the metropolis. The governor of the State was among the lost, besides many distinguished and valuable citizens.

Richmond was shrouded in mourning; there was scarcely a family in which there was not one dead. When the news of the calamity reached Washington, it was resolved, in both houses of Congress, that the members should wear crape on the left arm for a month. The Monumental Church now covers the site of the old theatre, and at the door is a monument bearing upon it as an inscription the names of many of those who perished in this disaster.



MONUMENTAL CHURCH, RICHMOND.

The War of 1812.—The year following this sad event, a war broke out between Great Britain and the United States, known as the War of 1812. The account of this war belongs to the history of the United States. The scene of the conflict was, for the most part, far removed from Virginia, though her borders were not to escape invasion entirely.

Cockburn's Outrages.—An admiral of the British navy, named Cockburn (*ko-burn*), in the month of May of 1812 entered Chesapeake Bay and committed the most shocking depredations along the coasts of Maryland and Virginia. He had under his command a large fleet of ships and about twenty-six hundred men. A heavy fight took place near Norfolk between this fleet and the American gunboats. The battle was fought at Craney Island, which stands at the entrance of Norfolk harbor, and the Americans defended the position so bravely that the enemy were forced to abandon their designs on Norfolk. In rage and shame at their unexpected defeat, they turned their attention to Hampton, a comparatively unimportant post, defended by only a few men under Colonel Crutchfield. These kept back the enemy with determined bravery for a time, but were at last obliged to retire before overwhelming numbers. The British entered Hampton and committed every species of outrage. One aged man was brutally murdered in the presence of his wife, who herself was desperately wounded. The infamous Cockburn refused to protect the defenceless women who remained in the town from the negroes who followed in his train, answering one who applied to him for protection, that he “took it for granted that all the ladies had left” before his arrival. Happily, the stay of the British was of short duration, as the militia gathered in such numbers that Cockburn retired to his ships. The war lasted three years, but this was the only occasion upon which Virginia suffered invasion, though the State enthusiastically supported the Federal Government during the struggle.

QUESTIONS.

1. The events of what years are included in this chapter?
2. What was the next cause of public excitement in Virginia?
3. What was Callender's crime?
4. Who was Judge Chase, and what did he declare?
5. What steps were taken against Callender?
6. What lawyers defended him?
7. What difficulty arose between the lawyers and judge?
8. How did it end?
9. Give a short account of the history of slavery in Virginia.
10. Give an account of the Gabriel insurrection.
11. Give an account of the Nat Turner insurrection.
12. What was the condition of the city of Richmond in 1811?
13. Describe the burning of the theatre.
14. What effect did this event have through the country?
15. What did Congress do?
16. What happened the next year?
17. Was the principal scene of conflict in Virginia?
18. Where was she invaded, and by whom?
19. Give an account of the battle of Cranes Island.
20. Give an account of the occupation of Hampton.
21. How long did this war last?

CHAPTER XXX.

1818-1859.

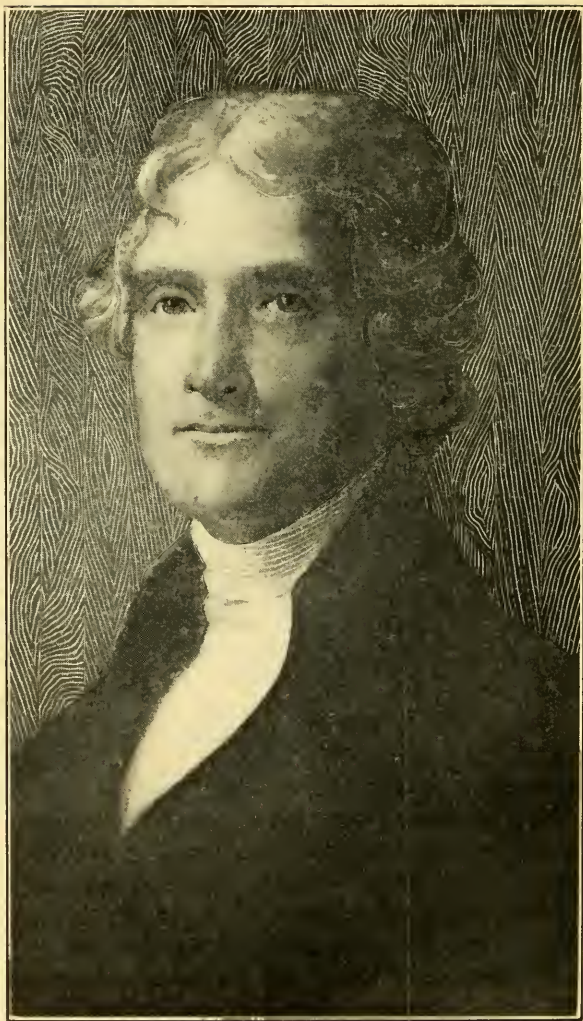
VIRGINIA THE "MOTHER OF PRESIDENTS"—UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA—
 DEATH OF THOMAS JEFFERSON—THE VIRGINIA CONSTITUTION
 AND THE MEN WHO MADE IT—TROUBLES BETWEEN THE STATES—
 JOHN BROWN'S RAID.

Presidents from Virginia.—Between 1815-1861, undisturbed by the horrors of war, Virginia had time to give her attention to matters essential to her permanent peace and prosperity. Of the first five Presidents of the United States, four—Washington, Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe—were from Virginia. Four others were born in Virginia: William Henry Harrison, John Tyler, Zachary Taylor,

and the present (1914) occupant of the White House—Woodrow Wilson. Hence Virginia is called not only the Mother of States, but the Mother of Presidents.

Jefferson at Home.—At the close of Jefferson's second term of office he retired to his beautiful home at Monticello, in Albemarle County, where he devoted the remainder of his life to literary and agricultural pursuits. But even in private life he was ever alive to the welfare of his native state. He had always taken a keen interest in the cause of education, and for years past he had indulged the hope of enlarging the college at Williamsburg into a great university, which would afford the same advantages as could be furnished by a European education. Though he was obliged to abandon his scheme in relation to Williamsburg, he still cherished the idea of a great Virginia university.

His Grand Purpose.—As he cast his eye over the beautiful country which lay around his mountain home, his imagination pictured a grand institution growing out of the bosom of these plains. An idea once conceived with him was not easily abandoned, and although years elapsed before he was able to accomplish his design, he at length induced the Legislature to appropriate a sum of money for the erection of the necessary buildings. About two miles from Charlottesville, in the county of Albemarle, there was already an institution called Central College. This was purchased by the State of Virginia, and Mr. Jefferson had the gratification of seeing the good work really commenced in earnest under his own superintendence. Six years passed away before the work was sufficiently advanced for the commencement of college exercises. Mr. Jefferson did not live to witness the established success of the University of Virginia, as his death occurred in 1826, only one year after this famous institution had opened its doors to students.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

The Constitution Revised.—In 1776, the young State of Virginia had formed for its government a constitution, which had been, on the whole, satisfactory. But changes were required, and, as the country was now quiet and prosperous, there was time to consider them. The vote of the people was taken, and members were appointed to a convention which met in the Capitol at Richmond, October 5, 1829. Very few of the great statesmen, with whom we have been acquainted in the past, were there. The voice of Patrick Henry, the pen of Jefferson, and the sword of George Washington were buried with them in their graves, but their patriotic spirit still lived in many who had succeeded them. Madison, Monroe, and Marshall were still alive and present, to tell the young men of the “spirit of ’76” and of ’98, and to hold up the “Bill of Rights” and the “Resolutions of ’98”; and John Randolph, whose sun rose just as that of Patrick Henry set in 1799. After a discussion which lasted three months, the changed and improved Constitution was adopted by this assembly of notables and the convention adjourned.

The Mexican War.—In 1837, Texas, which had belonged to Mexico, became an independent republic. Her independence, though acknowledged by the United States and by European nations, was never recognized by Mexico. Hence, when Texas, at her own request, was admitted into the Union in 1845, war with Mexico was unavoidable. Further, there was a dispute as to the boundary line between Mexico and Texas. When, therefore, American troops under General Zachary Taylor were ordered to occupy the disputed territory, Mexico sent troops against him and the skirmish between the Americans and the Mexicans began the war in April, 1846. By this war, which ended in 1848, the United States

acquired a very large extent of territory comprising the States of Texas, California, New Mexico, Nevada, Arizona, Utah, and parts of Colorado and Wyoming. Many of the officers who distinguished themselves in Mexico afterwards acquired still greater distinction in the Civil War. Among these were Grant, Sherman, McClellan, Lee, Jackson, Beauregard, and Jefferson Davis. This war intensified the bitterness of the struggle in regard to slavery. The anti-slavery party bitterly opposed the war and the admission of Texas. Violent disputes also arose over the admission of California as a State and over the introduction of slavery into the newly acquired territory.

The Slavery Question.—As years went on, this question of slavery was a constant source of trouble between the different States of the Union. The difficulties to which it gave rise make up so large a portion of the history of the State that it is necessary to review the subject before we go any further.

England supports Slavery.—You will recall the fact that in 1619 a Dutch vessel brought to the young colony a cargo of Africans, who were used as slaves. This proved the beginning of a train of evil for the whole country, as England took up the traffic, and in the face of the remonstrances of Virginia insisted upon her receiving and employing the slaves. Queen Anne owned one-fourth of the stock of the Royal African Company, as it was called, and it is computed that under the fostering care of England three hundred thousand slaves were brought to America.

Virginia, to check the growth of slavery, imposed a tax on all Africans brought into the colony, but the queen, the Parliament, and the merchants of England would not agree

to give up a traffic which was bringing them enormous profits, and the law was repealed. In 1775, the year before her separation from Great Britain, Virginia made an earnest remonstrance against the importation of African slaves, and was answered that nothing should be done to check a traffic so beneficial to the nation.

Slaves in all the Colonies.—At the time of the formation of the Union of States slavery existed in them all, with the single exception of Massachusetts, and there it had ceased only a short time before. With the exception of Massachusetts, the New England States were strong advocates for carrying on the trade, because they were largely engaged in it, and made a great deal of money by bringing slaves into the Southern ports and selling them to the planters. The cotton States favored slavery because the negroes, being from a warm climate, could stand the work in the cotton-fields under the Southern sun so much better than the whites, and they were glad to buy all that New England brought. So important did the States of Georgia and South Carolina consider this institution that they would not agree to join the Union unless there was a law made that it should not be interfered with. Thus it was that the interests of the cotton States and New England were the same, and in the discussions in Congress they always furnished the strongest advocates for continuing the slave trade. Virginia, on the contrary, always raised her voice against it, and was the first of the States to forbid it by law. Her ablest men—Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Mason, Wythe, Lee, Page, Marshall, and others—considered it a great curse, and all expected that in a short time Virginia would be a free State.

Abolition of the Slave-Trade.—In 1778 Virginia and other States, north and south, brought a bill before Congress for the abolition of the slave-trade. New England

and the cotton States objected for reasons already given. Mr. John Brown, of Rhode Island, argued that every country in the civilized world had the privilege of bringing slaves from Africa, and there seemed no reason why New England should not have the same advantages, especially as there was no doubt that the condition of the Africans themselves was bettered by the change. It was further argued that the loss to New England would be very heavy, as she had so much money invested in her slave-ships. Hence it was agreed to defer the abolition of the slave-trade till 1808. After this year no slaves were to be brought into the country, though the traffic was for years secretly carried on. Afterwards New England became the most bitter abolition section, but the cotton States held on to the institution of slavery because it was guaranteed to them under the Constitution, and because they considered it essential to their prosperity.

The Northern States, cleansed from what they now considered a great crime, looked with horror upon their Southern sisters who dared to hold their fellow-creatures in bondage; while the Southern people, having a large part of their property invested in this way, and deeming the negro necessary to the cultivation of their crops, contended for their rights under the Constitution to keep their slaves.

A Bitter Animosity.—The feeling upon this subject grew in bitterness, many individuals at the North regarding it as a religious duty to purge the Union from this great evil, and the South holding to it more obstinately from this interference with their legal rights. The question was continually discussed in Congress; abolitionists came South and enticed the slaves from their masters; books were written giving false or exaggerated pictures of the condition of the slave in the South, representing the masters as cruel tyrants. Thus a bitter animosity

grew up between the two sections. Visitors from the North were looked upon with suspicion: books from the North were banished from Southern territory; Southern Legislatures made laws forbidding the master to teach his slave to read, because of the dangerous books they would be supplied with. Travellers going North dared not take their servants with them, for fear of losing them.

Virginia, occupying a middle position between these opposing sections, was influenced by contact with both. Slavery had been entailed upon her almost against her will; and we have seen how she paused, even in the midst of the bloody scenes of the Revolution, to make laws that no more slaves should be brought within her boundaries. From that time the question of freeing them was constantly discussed in her Legislature, and a large number of her statesmen advocated it. It became a common occurrence for slave-holders, at their death, to leave their slaves free and provided for. John Randolph of Roanoke did this, and appropriated a large portion of his property for their support. Thus the gradual banishment of slavery was looked upon as a certainty. Owing to this condition of affairs, slavery ceased to be regarded in the State as a matter of profit, and the buying and selling of slaves was rare. Slave-dealers were looked upon with disgust. Families of negroes were retained in the same household for generations, passing down from father to son, until the affectionate connection between the Virginia master and his servant, who had shared his boyish sports, and now performed the duties of a mild servitude, became proverbial.

The Feeling in Virginia.—We have seen that, in her contests with England, Virginia never willingly conceded to another what she considered her rights. Thus when she found that her Northern sisters were attempting to

force her to emancipate her slaves, the spirit of the Old Dominion rose. She remembered her Declaration of Rights, she recalled her State sovereignty, and tightening her grasp upon her property which she was beginning to hold so loosely, she declared her intention to act for herself in the matter, made stricter laws with regard to her slave population, and joined hands with her Southern sisters upon the disputed question.

New Parties.—The breach now went on widening. The political parties of the country were no longer “Federalist” and “Republican,” “Whig” and “Democrat,” but Slavery and Antislavery. New States were constantly being made, and the question frequently discussed was whether slave-holders should be permitted to carry their property into these new States. The Constitution of the United States permitted this, and many Southerners insisted upon their rights, but when they attempted to carry their slaves into these new states they were opposed by determined men, and scenes of violence and bloodshed ensued.

John Brown's Raid.—One of the fiercest of the free-soilers, as they were called, was John Brown of Kansas. His whole life had been one of adventure, and now, in his old age, the idea of freeing the slave seems to have taken full possession of his thoughts. Encouraged by many intelligent men at the North in his violent course of conduct, John Brown laid a deep scheme for freeing the negroes, first in Virginia and afterwards in the other Southern States. For two years he prepared for this object. Silently and secretly he purchased arms. Those he intended for the negroes were small pikes, but capable of doing deadly work in the hands of a skilful workman. He had with him only eighteen men, but he expected to have his number swelled by the slaves as soon as his presence was known.

Harper's Ferry captured.—On Sunday night, the 16th of October, 1859, he crossed the Potomac from Maryland, entered Harper's Ferry, captured the United States Arsenal at that place, and sent out armed men to seize the prominent slave-holders in the neighborhood and to announce their freedom to the negroes. So silently was all this done that even the citizens of the town remained in perfect ignorance of the invasion until the next morning, when every one who left his house was at once captured and imprisoned in an engine-house very near to the arsenal. In the meantime the armed parties returned, bringing in some prisoners and many slaves, in whose hands the pikes were placed, and they were ordered to "strike for freedom." The poor creatures, however, only looked frightened, and showed little disposition to take advantage of their opportunities, so John Brown found that he had nothing to hope from their assistance.

The Invaders defeated.—Soon the news of this invasion of Virginia spread throughout the country, and the excitement surpassed anything ever known there before. The people flocked towards Harper's Ferry from all directions, with arms in their hands, and before night Brown and his party were shut up in the engine-house and surrounded by indignant Virginians. As soon as the news reached Washington, the government ordered a party of marines to proceed to Harper's Ferry under the command of *Colonel

*Robert Edward Lee, son of "Light Horse Harry Lee" and Anne Hill Carter, was born January 19, 1809, in Westmoreland County at Stratford, the birthplace of his distinguished kinsmen, Richard Henry Lee and Francis Lightfoot Lee. Prepared for West Point at the Hallowell Mathematical School he graduated with distinction at the Military Academy in 1829. In 1831, he married Mary Randolph Custis, the great-granddaughter of Martha Washington. He did such fine engineering work at St. Louis and elsewhere that he became captain of engineers in 1839. In the Mexican War, 1846-1848, he so distinguished himself that he rose to the rank of Colonel. In 1852, he was appointed superintendent of the military academy at West Point, a position which he held for three years. After this he was stationed in Texas, then greatly disturbed by Indian inroads. The rest of his career is a part of Virginia history.

Robert E. Lee, and Brown was summoned to surrender. When he refused the engine-house was stormed by the marines, and in less than thirty-six hours after he had entered Virginia, John Brown and his party were either killed or captured, and the insurrection which he had taken two years to prepare for was suppressed. Not a negro volunteered to join him. Ten of his men were killed, and all the rest wounded, including Brown himself. The first blood they shed was that of a free negro named Heyward. Besides they killed five of their opposers and wounded nine. The criminals were tried at Charlestown, Virginia, and were hanged for treason, insurrection, and murder. Thus ended the "John Brown raid," as it was called; but it was the beginning of a series of events which constitute a new era in the history of Virginia.

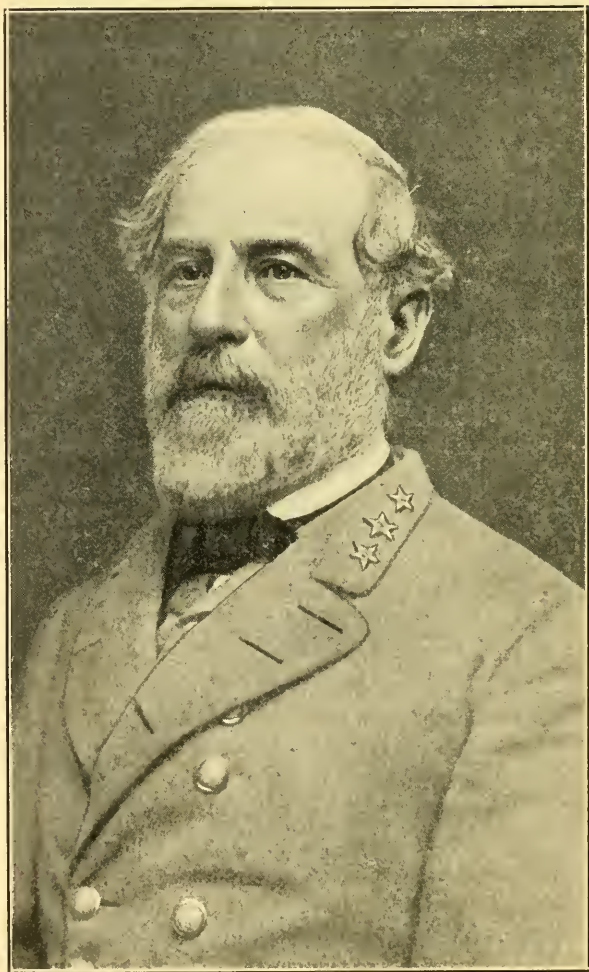
QUESTIONS.

1. From what year to what year does this chapter include?
2. What period followed these events in the history of Virginia?
3. Name the Presidents of the United States from Virginia.
4. What did Mr. Jefferson do at the close of his Presidential term, and how did he employ his advancing years?
5. To the accomplishment of what idea did he devote his thoughts?
6. Where did he propose building the University of Virginia?
7. Tell of his difficulties, and how he accomplished his design.
8. When did Mr. Jefferson die?
9. What next engaged the attention of the statesmen of the United States?
10. Tell of the Virginia Convention.
11. What three great patriots do we miss at this Convention?
12. Who were there, and what of the past did they recall?
13. Where have you known John Randolph before?
14. What was accomplished by the Convention?
15. What institution now became a source of trouble?
16. What made the difference of feeling on the subject?
17. How did the two sections regard it?
18. What position did Virginia occupy?
19. What effect did opposition have upon her, and why?

20. What were the two political parties in the country now?
 21. Who was John Brown, and what was his history?
 22. What scheme did he form?
 23. Tell of his raid into Virginia.
 24. How did it end?
 25. What period does this mark in the history of Virginia?
-

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PERIOD III: VIRGINIA FROM
THE REVOLUTION TO THE CIVIL WAR, 1783-1861.

1. Tell the story of Rumsey and his invention.
2. What provisions were made for the organization of the New Union?
3. What great territory did Virginia give up in 1784?
4. What provision was made in regard to slavery in this territory?
5. What was the date and work of the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia?
6. What action did Virginia take in regard to the Union?
7. Who was the first President of the United States?
8. What State was formed at this time out of Virginia territory, and what was the character of this State?
9. What were the two chief political parties in the United States at this time, and what did each believe?
10. Which was the chief party in Virginia?
11. Explain the Alien and Sedition laws and their connection with Callender's trial.
12. What famous Resolutions did they cause in Virginia?
13. Tell the story of Patrick Henry's last candidacy.
14. How was Washington's death received?
15. Give an account of slave insurrections in Virginia.
16. Give an account of a terrible event that occurred in 1811.
17. Name the Presidents from Virginia.
18. What great university did Jefferson found and when?
19. Tell the story of the Constitutional Convention of 1829.
20. Cause of the Mexican War and territory acquired from Mexico.
21. Connection with the Civil War and slavery.
22. Give the history of Virginia's attitude towards slavery.
23. What was the attitude of Northern States towards slavery?
24. Give an account of John Brown's raid.



GEN. ROBERT E. LEE.

PERIOD IV: VIRGINIA IN THE CONFEDERACY, 1861-1865.

CHAPTER XXXI.

1860-1861.

CAUSES OF THE CIVIL WAR—CONSEQUENCES OF THE ELECTION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN—VIRGINIA PASSES THE ORDINANCE OF SECESSION—ATTITUDE OF MARYLAND—COMPARATIVE RESOURCES OF THE NORTH AND SOUTH.

Causes of the Civil War.—In order to understand the questions that gave rise to the Civil War it is necessary to review some facts already given.

When the government of England became oppressive to her colonies in America, they determined to throw off the yoke of the mother country and govern themselves. There were thirteen different colonies which made this determination, and they became thirteen different States, each with a governor and legislature of its own. But their interests in many things were the same; for instance, though separate, they were one in their resistance to England; and thus, fighting all together for an object of mutual interest, they were bound to each other by ties of affection. Hence they all signed the Declaration of Independence, and formed a government known as the United States of America. Now, when they joined in the united government, there were many of the great and wise men of all the States who were very much afraid that the Union might interfere with the State governments. So, in framing the laws, or Constitution, of the United States, they tried to make it as plain as possible that each State was to have its own government, and that the United States government was not to interfere with the rights of the States. At least four of the States, Virginia,

South Carolina, Massachusetts, and New York, when they adopted the Constitution, reserved the right to withdraw from the Union.

Thus States both in the North and the South believed at first in the right of a State to secede. As time went on, however, the Union sentiment grew stronger and stronger. Many ties of affection and of interest bound the States more firmly together. The inhabitants of the various States had fought side by side against the Indians, against Great Britain (1812), and against Mexico (1846). Railroads and common commercial interests linked them financially. The eloquent speeches of Webster (1830-1850) glorifying the Constitution and the Union strengthened still more the Union sentiment. Further, through a more and more liberal interpretation of the Constitution, the powers of the central government at Washington had become very much enlarged. The new States, too, formed after the Constitution had been adopted, naturally had less State pride than the original thirteen, and thus were less inclined to resent the growth of the central power at Washington. Hence, by 1860, a large majority of people in the North and a respectable minority in the South believed that the Union was indivisible.

The Southern States, especially Virginia, loved the Union which they had done so much to form, but they cherished still more dearly the rights of the States. They, therefore, resented any interference with these rights and were especially indignant at the growing hostility of the North towards slavery.

The opponents of slavery contended that the general government should interfere to prevent its extension into the Territories and new States, some of the more extreme

opponents going so far as to advocate interference with it in the localities where it already existed. The South contended that the general government had nothing to do with slavery, and that it was a domestic institution which each State should be left to manage for itself, with the right on the part of its citizens to carry their slaves into the Territories that belonged alike to all the States. Every year this question was discussed in Congress, especially since the Mexican War, and, as is always the case when people quarrel, bitterness grew between the sections, and the John Brown raid, in October, 1859, gave the finishing stroke to the matter. Then the Southern States began to talk of withdrawing, or seceding, from the Union.

Secession begins.—During the fall of 1860 there was an election to be held for President of the United States, and there were four candidates in the field. The one who was elected was Abraham Lincoln, and he was chosen by that party which was opposed to slavery and was pledged to prevent its extension beyond the limits it then occupied, and whose extreme members even wished, as I have said, to interfere with it in the States. So most of the Southern States determined to withdraw, believing that the success of the party which was bitterly opposed to slavery would lead to a violent interference with their domestic affairs. South Carolina seceded on the 20th of December, and was followed in two months by six others. They were anxious that Virginia should join the Southern Confederacy, on account of her influence in the Union. But it was not the way of Virginia to act hastily. She loved the Union, and knew that war would bring sorrow and loss to her, for from her geographical position she must necessarily be one of the chief battle-grounds of the war. So she proposed a peace congress to meet in Washington on the 4th

of February, and at the same time the Legislature called a convention of the people of Virginia to meet in Richmond, on the same day, to decide what course Virginia should take. The Peace Congress met and accomplished nothing, and the Convention sat until May, watching the course of events.

Virginia Secedes.—On the 15th of April, President Lincoln issued a proclamation for seventy-five thousand troops to suppress the efforts of the people in some of the Southern States to maintain their rights. The Southern people considered this proclamation a declaration of war, and a violation of the Constitution, which declared Congress the war-making power. When, in the same proclamation, the President called upon Virginia and all the other States to raise large armies to subdue the South, there remained nothing for Virginia to do but to pass an ordinance of secession and throw in her lot, for better or worse, with those States which were about to fight to the death for those principles which she had always advocated. The Convention, which had been sitting in Richmond since the 4th of February, passed the ordinance of secession on the 17th of April, two days after the Lincoln proclamation. In May the voters of the State ratified the action of the Convention.

Maryland's attitude.—Maryland was quite as earnest as Virginia for the Southern cause, but, because of her position, it was harder for her to join the Southern States. The North determined that she should not do so, and they did succeed in preventing her from seceding. Her brave soldiers, however, fought shoulder to shoulder with Virginians; and when the Northern troops passed through Baltimore to go against the South, they were resisted by a mob of the citizens. Blood was shed on both sides, and

the governor, who acted in the interest of the North, notified the United States government that the people could not be controlled if troops were brought through the city. Hence, they were taken through Annapolis, and Marylanders were assured that the troops were to be used only to defend the Capitol at Washington. Maryland suffered greatly at this time. Her prominent citizens were arrested and imprisoned, and troops were raised on her soil; but she was true at heart to the South all through the struggle, and spared neither men, money, nor stores to help the cause she loved.

Resources of the North and the South.—The story of the Civil War, the most terrible war of modern times, belongs properly to United States History. We shall give, therefore, only a brief account of the noble part Virginia played in this great struggle. To appreciate her heroism, however, it is necessary to have some idea of the resources of the North and the South in 1861.

Twenty-one States, including West Virginia, favored the Northern side, eleven the Southern, three, Missouri, Maryland, and Kentucky being divided in their allegiance. The population of the South was nine millions, three and one-half of these being slaves. The white population of the North was twenty-two millions. The South enlisted nearly a million of soldiers out of a military population of a little more than a million. The North enlisted over two millions and a half, counting foreigners and negroes. She had a military population of nearly four millions. The North had taxable property worth more than ten billions, the South five, two billions being slaves. Thus, both in men and in money, the resources of the North were more than double those of the South. Further, the great Appalachian Mountain region stretching through Virginia,

North Carolina, Kentucky, and Tennessee furnished nearly two hundred thousand soldiers to the Federal army, and constituted a hostile barrier dividing a great part of the Southern territory. This mountain region, especially in Kentucky and Tennessee, could thus be readily occupied by the Federal forces.

The North also had a well-organized central government, while the South had to organize hers. She was hampered, too, by the fact that the States did not always coöperate as they should have done with the Southern central government. They sometimes pushed the doctrine of States' Rights too far. But, worst of all, the South was almost entirely dependent upon Europe and the North for manufactured articles. At the opening of the war there were only two large iron foundries in the whole South. "The day after the victory of First Manassas there was not powder enough left in Virginia to fight another battle." As the South had not engaged to any extent in commerce, her direct trade with Europe, even before the blockade of her ports, was very limited.

The Civil War was the first great war in history in which railroads were used to aid in military operations. The Southern railroads, not so numerous nor so well-equipped as the Northern at the opening of the war, declined steadily in number and equipment as the war progressed. They could not be kept up because of the lack of machine shops.

But it was the Northern Navy that really "turned the scale in the war." She had nearly all of the old navy and was thus enabled to blockade Southern ports and send supplies to her armies up the large navigable streams of the South. By the blockade, most of the cotton, the most profitable crop of the South, was kept out of Europe. its

best market. With her very small navy, however, the South destroyed a large number of Northern vessels.

To offset all these drawbacks it must never be forgotten that the soldiers of the Southern army were fighting most of the time on their own soil and in defence of their homes, their loved ones, and their most sacred rights. These considerations more than anything else will account for the length and stubbornness of the conflict.

NOTE.—The editor is indebted to Thomas Nelson Page's "Life of Lee" for this account of the comparative resources of the North and South.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did the founders of the government think about the relation between the States and the Central Government?
2. What four reserved the right originally to withdraw from the Union?
3. What caused the growth of Union sentiment?
4. What was the belief of the majority in the South about the Union and the rights of the States in 1860?
5. What were the chief troubles in regard to the slavery question?
6. Who was elected President in 1860?
7. How did the South regard his election?
8. What State seceded first and when?
9. What was Virginia's attitude at first?
10. What made her change?
11. What was Maryland's attitude?
12. Give on each side, North and South :
 - a. The number of states.
 - b. Whole population.
 - c. Military population and army.
 - d. Value of property.
 - e. Condition of central government.
 - f. Manufactures.
 - g. Railroads.
 - h. Navy.
13. Effect of a hostile population in the Appalachian Mountains.
14. Why was the South able to hold out so long?
15. Give in review the causes of the war.

CHAPTER XXXII.

1861.—CONTINUED.

PREPARATIONS FOR WAR—VIRGINIAN WAR LEADERS—FEDERAL PLANS
—BATTLE OF FIRST MANASSAS—SUMMARY OF EVENTS OF 1861.

Preparations for War.—When Virginia seceded in 1861 she was not prepared for war. She had only a few troops guarding the public property at Richmond, and her State armory was poorly equipped. Men and arms were, therefore, in great demand. Soon volunteers from all over the State came flocking to the Confederate standard. These undisciplined troops were drilled mainly by the cadets of the Virginia Military Institute under the direction of Major Thomas J. Jackson,* then a professor at that institution. Preparations were also made for the manufacture of cannon and firearms. The Confederate authorities were very anxious to take possession of Harper's Ferry, where the United States had large supplies of arms. The Federal authorities, hearing of the approach of the Confederates, attempted to destroy these, but in their haste they succeeded imperfectly, hence a large quantity of machinery, cannon, and firearms came into the possession

*Thomas Jonathan Jackson ("Stonewall"), born in Clarksburg, now West Virginia, and left a penniless orphan at three, had a hard struggle for an education and a living. With characteristic grit and pluck when he heard of a vacancy at West Point he went partly on foot to Washington. Clad in a homespun suit, with his saddlebags thrown over his shoulder, he so impressed the Secretary of War with his manliness and independence that the appointment to West Point was given him. Though he barely passed the entrance examination he studied so faithfully that he graduated seventeenth in a class consisting of such members as McClellan, Pickett, and A. P. Hill, all famous afterwards in the Civil War. One who knew him well said, "If the course had been longer old Jack would have graduated at the head of the class." In the Mexican War he was promoted more rapidly than any other officer in the American army. In 1851, he was elected professor of Natural Science and instructor

of the Confederates. The Federal forces at Norfolk also destroyed a great deal of shipping, but left uninjured the fine dock, costing over a million of dollars.

Virginian War Leaders.—When the war began most of the Southern officers in the Federal army resigned their commission and joined the Confederates. Among these were General Joseph E. Johnston and Colonel Robert E. Lee, son of "Light Horse Harry Lee," a famous Revolutionary officer. If Colonel Lee, who had distinguished himself in the Mexican War, had remained in the Federal Army he would have attained the highest rank, but, as he says in a letter to his sister, "With all my devotion to the Union and the feeling of loyalty and duty as an American citizen, I have not been able to make up my mind to raise my hand against my relatives, my children, and my home." His loyalty and ability were promptly recognized, for he was soon made commander of the Virginia troops by the governor of the State. To the surprise of many, Governor Letcher also made Major Thomas J. Jackson colonel of volunteers. Though, like Colonel Lee he had distinguished himself in the Mexican War, he was only known at the time as a somewhat eccentric professor at the Virginia Military Institute. But the governor's wisdom in both appointments was soon to be

in military tactics at the Virginia Military Institute, Lexington, Virginia. While in Lexington he conducted a Bible Class for negroes, and was greatly beloved by them. Diffident and reserved he faltered so much when first called upon to pray in public that the pastor of the Presbyterian Church of which Jackson was the deacon kindly refrained from calling upon him for some time. But the sturdy deacon felt that public prayer was one of the duties of his office, and insisted upon being called on again. All through his life he felt the power of prayer, and at every crisis in his military career he sought the guidance of the God of battles. Like Lee, Jackson was opposed to secession, but when Lincoln issued his call for troops he was in favor of meeting Northern invasion, as he said, "by drawing the sword and throwing away the scabbard." The rest of his life is a part of the history of the war.

Adapted from Southern Biography, Vol. XI, "The South in the Building of the Nation."

amply vindicated, for Colonel Lee afterwards became one of the greatest generals of modern times, and General Jackson's campaigns in the Valley were so brilliant that they have challenged the admiration of military men all over the world. General Johnston, one of the ablest of the Confederate generals, was appointed by President Davis commander of the Confederate forces in Virginia, and held this position till after the battle of Seven Pines, May 31, 1862, in which he was severely wounded.

Federal Plans.—While there were important military operations in Tennessee, Mississippi, and Georgia, it was soon apparent that Virginia was to be the chief seat of war. Her geographical position made this unavoidable. The Capital of the Confederacy was, therefore, removed May 21st, 1861, from Montgomery, Alabama, to Richmond. "On to Richmond" was then the cry of the Federals from this time to the close of the war. Four Federal armies were to move against Richmond, one from the east up the James River, one from the north through the middle of the State, one up the Valley, and the other from the northwest to join the last. Four Confederate armies opposed each of these. General Johnston, under whom Colonel Jackson served, commanded the army at Harper's Ferry, and was under orders to hold this important place if he thought it wise. General Beauregard commanded the army of the center at Manassas, and was opposed by General McDowell.

The Battle of Manassas.—Though there had been an engagement in northwest Virginia in which the Confederates had been defeated, and one at Big Bethel (June 10) on the peninsula in which they gained a victory, the first important battle of the war was fought at Manassas or Bull Run, as it was called by the Federals. The Federal

army was fifty-two thousand strong, while the Confederates had thirty-two thousand men. The equipments of the Federal army—by which you must understand the fire-arms, artillery, uniforms, teams, and tents—were magnificent. They had every preparation made for their comfort. The Confederates, on the other hand, were poorly equipped and wretchedly clad. Their artillery and fire-arms were of the greatest variety of old-fashioned patterns. Few of the cannon were over six-pounders, while a large number of the infantry were armed with common muskets, and many of the cavalry with shot-guns which they had used in hunting game in the woods. The long lines of army wagons with their snow-white covers, drawn by well-fed, strong horses, on the Federal side, contrasted strikingly with the coverless vehicles and the meagre horse-flesh in the Confederate rear. But the odds in other respects were all on the Confederate side, for they fought on their own soil, to repel the invader and defend their homes; and these incentives more than counterbalanced the superior numbers and equipment of their foe.

The Confederate line was eight miles long, extending along the southern bank of Bull Run, which was fordable at various points; and at these fords were placed the different divisions of the army. The Federal army was about three miles away, extending along the road from Centreville to Alexandria. In the artillery fight of the 18th, the effort was made to cross two of the fords of Bull Run, but Beauregard drove them back. The plan was now changed, and it was determined by the Federal commander to march a portion of his army around the head of the Confederate line, which was near a stone bridge, and by getting in the rear of the Confederates, crush them between the two Federal lines, or force them to retreat. This brought the heavy fighting just to that

point,—the stone bridge. There the fight raged hour after hour with varying success. At one time all seemed lost to the Confederates, when reinforcements arrived, under Generals Bee and Bartow, to the assistance of Colonel Evans, who was outflanked and sorely pressed. Here for two hours the Confederate left wing resisted the assault of the enemy, but despite its heroic efforts it was steadily forced back by overwhelming numbers. The shattered ranks were exhausted and dispirited, while the Federal army was exultant.

At this critical moment General Jackson reached the scene with his brigade of two thousand six hundred men. These he quickly disposed upon the crest of a ridge, and posted seventeen pieces of artillery along his line. On the right of this brigade General Bee formed the remains of the forces under him and Evans. The whole numbered about six thousand five hundred. Against these a Federal column of twenty thousand, mostly fresh reserves, with twenty-four pieces of artillery, made impetuous charges from eleven till three o'clock, when again it seemed as if the days was about to be lost to the Confederates. General Bee rode up to Jackson and said in despairing tones, "General, they are beating us back." "Then," replied Jackson, "we will give them the bayonet." This inspired Bee with fresh resolution, and hurrying back to his dispirited men he exclaimed, "There is Jackson standing like a stone wall. Rally behind the Virginians." This circumstance gave to Jackson and his brigade the name *Stonewall*. A bayonet charge was made before which the enemy recoiled and fled. The gallant Bee fell pierced by a ball. But fresh regiments continued to pour in, and the Federals extended their line still farther to the right. It was now four o'clock in the afternoon, and the Federals, who had been repulsed but not routed, were preparing for another determined effort.

At this critical juncture the reserves from the Confederate right, nine miles distant, arrived under Generals Early and Holmes, and arrested the flank movement of the Federals, while at the same time General Kirby Smith reached the field with the remainder of the army from the Valley. He had arrived at Manassas Junction while the battle was raging, and following the sound of the cannon and musketry, assaulted the right wing of the Federal army. Consternation seized the ranks of the Federals



JACKSON AT MANASSAS (BULL RUN).

from this unexpected attack, and giving way they fled in confusion from the field, and did not stop until they were across the Long Bridge and within the defences of Washington. General Bartow was killed while rallying his brave Georgians. While his life was ebbing away he exclaimed, "Yes, they have killed me, but never give up the field." General Kirby Smith was dangerously wounded.



GENERAL "STONEWALL" JACKSON.

Thus ended one of the most remarkable battles of the world's history. The Confederates captured twenty-eight cannon and five thousand muskets. General Jackson, seeing the demoralization and panic-stricken rout of the enemy, remarked that with ten thousand fresh troops he believed he could go into Washington.

The "Stonewall" Brigade.—After the battle of Manassas, General Jackson was again promoted, and ordered to a new command in the Valley of the Shenandoah. In taking command of this division General Jackson was separated from the "Stonewall Brigade," which was ordered to remain under the command of General Johnston. This was a great trial to Jackson and to the brigade, as he had led them from the beginning of the war and the warmest affection existed between them. But orders must be obeyed, and he took leave of them in words too full of interest to be omitted. After speaking to them with the tender pride of a father of the record that they had already made, and assuring them of the interest with which he would watch their future, his calm self-control gave place to the most profound emotion; his lips quivered, and, throwing the bridle on the neck of his horse, he rose in his stirrups and, extending his arms towards them, said, "In the Army of the Shenandoah you were the First Brigade! In the Army of the Potomac you were the First Brigade! In the Second Corps of the army you are the First Brigade! You are the First Brigade in the affections of your general; and I hope by your future deeds and bearing you will be handed down to posterity as the First Brigade in this our second War for Independence. Farewell!" But the separation between Jackson and the First Brigade lasted only a few weeks, for, much to the delight of the general and his men, they were ordered to join his command in November.

Summary of Events in 1861.—It will be seen from the account of the conflict thus far in Virginia that the advantage lay with the Confederates. They had won the important Battle of Manassas and had been victorious in nearly all of the minor engagements. In what is now known as West Virginia, however, the Federal forces were in the main successful, and by the close of the year had possession of a large part of the State. West Virginia had refused to abide by the Virginia ordinance of secession, and was in 1863 admitted into the Union as a separate State.

Outside of Virginia, Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, had been bombarded and had fallen into the hands of the Confederates April 14th. This was the beginning of hostilities. The Federal forces had driven the Confederates from Missouri, had strongly entrenched themselves in Kentucky, and had prevented Maryland from seceding. Further, they had captured Fort Hatteras, in North Carolina, and had taken possession of the important harbor, Port Royal, in South Carolina. Both sides now began to realize the magnitude of the conflict. The Federal Congress called for half a million of volunteers, and authorized the expenditure of half a billion of dollars. The Confederates called for 400,000 men and issued \$100,000 in treasury notes.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was Virginia prepared for war?
2. Who mainly drilled the recruits?
3. What places were the Virginians anxious to possess and why?
4. Who were some of the prominent Virginian war leaders?
5. Why did General Lee resign from the Federal Army?
6. What were the Federal plans?
7. Give an account of the first Battle of Manassas.
8. Why didn't the Confederates advance on Washington after this battle?
9. What other important battle was fought in Virginia during this year?
10. What were the important events of the war outside of Virginia?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

1862.

A MEMORABLE YEAR—JACKSON'S VALLEY CAMPAIGN—OPERATIONS IN SOUTHEASTERN VIRGINIA—MONITOR AND MERRIMAC—PENINSULA CAMPAIGN—SECOND MANASSAS—THE MARYLAND CAMPAIGN—SUMMARY OF EVENTS IN 1862.

A Memorable Year.—1862 was a glorious year for the Confederate forces in Virginia. The chief events of the year cluster around operations in the Valley of Virginia, in southeast and north central Virginia, in the engagements near Richmond, and in Maryland. In the final outcome of each of these campaigns the Confederates were either wholly or, in the case of Maryland, partly successful.

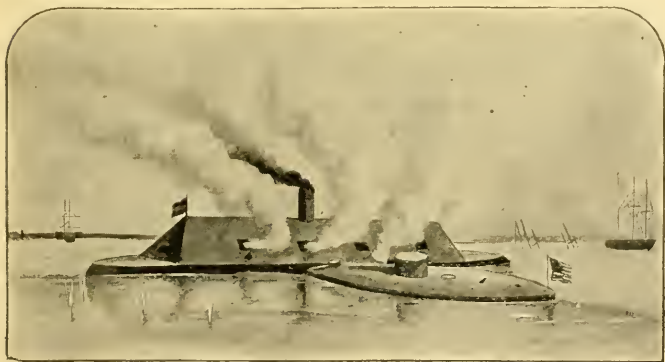
Jackson's Valley Campaign. — The most brilliant achievement of the year, and one of the most notable in the records of modern warfare, was General Stonewall Jackson's campaign in the Valley. As in the year preceding, the Federal plans were to advance on Richmond and at the same time protect Washington from attack. General Jackson determined to keep the Federal forces in the Valley of Virginia so busy that they could not unite with General McClellan, the commander of the Federal forces in the Southeast. In less than three months, with a force never equalling twenty thousand men, he defeated Milroy at McDowell, May 8th, drove Banks from Winchester May 25th, defeated Fremont at Cross Keys June 8th, and on June 9th put to rout McDowell's reinforcements at Port Republic, sustaining only one defeat, Kernstown. In each of these engagements he was outnumbered by his opponents. Further, by these victories he cap-

tured thousands of prisoners, took possession of ammunition and stores of great value to the Confederacy, and prevented sixty thousand men from joining McClellan.

He had, besides, completely disarranged the plan laid down by the government at Washington for the conquest of the South, delaying McClellan's advance against Richmond, while large armies were detached to operate against him in the Valley. Jackson did not leave the Valley until several weeks after the defeat of Fremont. His men were very much worn out and were permitted a period of rest. Colonel Munford, the successor of the dashing young cavalry leader, Turner Ashby, killed near Harrisonburg, June 6th, took Harrisonburg, with prisoners and stores, and the army camped between that place and Staunton. General Jackson moved his camps here and there to give the enemy the idea that there were a great many Confederates in the Valley. In consequence of this display of strength the Federal commanders were constantly expecting an advance from an overwhelming force, and troops were concentrated and fortifications thrown up. Jackson's cavalry took care that there should be no communication between the armies to contradict the exaggerated reports of the large force under his command. When Jackson was quite satisfied that the large army in front of him was fully occupied in making preparations for his reception, with the greatest secrecy he broke up camp, and the next news which the Federals in the lower Valley heard of him was that he was down on the Chickahominy fighting McClellan.

The Monitor and the Merrimac.—When the Federals evacuated Norfolk in 1861 they burned many of their vessels and sunk others. Among the latter the fine steam frigate "Merrimac," afterwards called the "Virginia," was

only partly destroyed. The Confederates raised this vessel, covered it with a thick coating of iron, and fastened a strong iron beak to its prow. These devices were due to the inventive genius of John Mercer Brooke, afterwards a professor in the Virginia Military Institute, and the discoverer of the method of taking deep-sea soundings. The "Virginia" was the first ironclad known in naval warfare, and was thus the forerunner of the formidable dreadnoughts of to-day. March 8, 1862, this strange-looking sea monster steamed into Hampton Roads, sunk two of the Federal vessels, whose guns could make no impression upon her iron sides, and was about to attack a third, the



BATTLE BETWEEN THE "MERRIMACK" AND "MONITOR"

"Minnesota," when the latter ran aground. The "Virginia" then steamed back to Norfolk, as the night was coming on, and returned next day to attack the "Minnesota." This time, however, the "Virginia" encountered an unexpected opponent in the Federal ironclad "Monitor," built by Ericsson. The "Monitor," with its revolving iron turret on a flat iron top, looked like "a cheese box on a plank." After a terrific firing lasting several hours,

during which neither vessel made any serious impression upon the other, the "Monitor" ran into shallow water, and the heavier Confederate vessel, unable to reach her, retired from the drawn battle, the first encounter of ironclads in naval warfare.

The Peninsula Campaign.—Before and during these naval conflicts, General McClellan, the Federal commander, had been massing in his forces in the Peninsula between the York and the James River, with the view of advancing on Richmond, with Fortress Monroe as his base. The Confederate general, Magruder, with a small force of eleven thousand men, held Yorktown, but was soon forced to retire before the superior numbers of his opponents. Being reinforced he was enabled to check the Federal advance at Williamsburg. The Confederates were also compelled to evacuate Norfolk, as this city was too far away from their base of supplies. At the same time, they destroyed the famous "Virginia," as she could not be taken up the James River. This left the James undefended, and enabled Federal vessels to advance as far up the river as Drury's Bluff, where they were held in check by the guns of Fort Darling.

Seven Pines or Fair Oaks.—May 31st, General Joseph E. Johnston attacked the Federal forces at Seven Pines (called Fair Oaks by the Federals), where a bloody but indecisive battle was fought, in which the Confederate commander was so severely wounded that he had to retire from active service for several months. General Robert E. Lee was then placed in command of the army of Northern Virginia.

The Campaign around Richmond.—Seven Pines is only a few miles from Richmond, and the two armies soon began to concentrate their forces around the Confederate

Capital. After his famous Valley campaign, General Jackson joined General Lee. General McClellan's forces were near the Chickahominy. General Lee, wishing to find out their position, sent the dashing cavalry officer, General J. E. B. ("Jeb") Stuart,* to make a raid in their rear. With a small force he made a complete circuit of the Federal commander's forces, destroying many valuable stores, and gave General Lee the information desired.

General Lee then attacked General McClellan's forces and, after a seven days' fight (June 25-July 1) at various points, succeeded in forcing his opponent to retire and abandon his plan of advance on Richmond. In the last of these battles, Malvern Hill, the loss on both sides was very heavy. Though the Confederates failed to dislodge their opponents from their strong position, General McClellan's loss in the successive battles was so great that his forces were completely demoralized, and he retired to Harrison Landing, near Westover, where he was protected by his gunboats. Thus ended the famous Peninsula Cam-

*James Ewell Brown Stuart was born in Patrick County, Virginia, February 6, 1833. On both his father's and his mother's side he was of distinguished Virginia ancestry. After a course at Emory and Henry College, he entered West Point and graduated with distinction. He was offered a high position in the Federal army at the opening of the war, but, like Colonel R. E. Lee, he followed the call of his native State. He was perhaps the greatest cavalry officer during the war. His energy and youthful ardor inspired enthusiasm everywhere. He seemed to know by instinct every movement of the enemy. Running incredible risks he laughed gaily over his hairbreadth escapes. General Johnston said he was like a yellow jacket; as soon as he was brushed off he was back again. His brilliant charge at First Manassas helped largely to win the day. He was invaluable to General Lee in the Peninsula. In the Seven Days' Fight around Richmond he was "the eyes and the ears of the army." After General Jackson was wounded at Chancellorsville, Stuart was put in command of Jackson's corps and led it with brilliant success. But he could not be spared from the cavalry. In the fight at Yellow Tavern, in 1864, he saved Richmond but lost his own life. An earnest Christian, he said to President Davis, who visited his bedside in Richmond: "I am ready to go if God and my country think I have fulfilled my duty." In his closing hours he joined his rector in fervent prayer and in singing the noble hymn "Rock of Ages," and then passed away to join his comrades in the Great Beyond.

Adapted mainly from Southern Biography, Vol. XII, "The South in the Building of the Nation."

paign. The advance on Richmond from the east was abandoned, and the Federal general was ordered to join near Manassas the forces of General Pope, a general who boasted that "his headquarters would be in the saddle," and that he did not intend to have any lines of retreat.

Second Battle of Manassas.—General Lee had sent Generals Jackson and Ewell to hold General Pope in check until General McClellan should withdraw from the Peninsula. General Jackson defeated his old adversary, General Banks, at Cedar Mountain, and, passing rapidly to the rear of General Pope's army, succeeded in capturing a large supply of stores at Manassas Junction. Meanwhile, General McClellan was advancing in a roundabout route by way of Washington to coöperate with General Pope, and General Lee, freed from all fear of an attack on Richmond, was advancing northward to join General Jackson. The hero of the Valley Campaign, hemmed in between two divisions of General Pope's army, each larger than his own, held the enemy at bay at Manassas until the arrival of General Lee's forces, then several miles away. Jackson knew that Pope had changed his base to Warrenton, and that General Lee would soon join him: so he planted himself on the old field of victory and determined to defend himself until he was reinforced. He did not have to wait long, for Longstreet's corps was nearing Thoroughfare Gap on its way to him. Pope suspected this and ordered an advance against Jackson, whose defeat was absolutely necessary, and as soon as possible. They fought on the old battle-field on the 28th, and although the loss to Jackson's army was heavy, including both Generals Ewell and Taliaferro, who were severely wounded, yet it was a decided victory for the Confederates.

When news came to Jackson that Longstreet's corps was close at hand he knew that the cause so dear to his

heart had secured another victory: and soon the clouds of dust in the direction of the mountain gap told Pope a truth which filled him with despair, for Lee had joined forces with Jackson. The next day the great battle of Second Manassas was fought. The woods and mountains which had witnessed the signal victory thirteen months before echoed to the Confederates' shouts of victory once again. It was not until after a long day's struggle that General Lee, looking anxiously towards the Federal lines, saw the confusion and dismay he had so long waited for and ordered a general advance. It was the signal for another panic-stricken flight over the same old route. General Lee is said to have paroled seven thousand prisoners on the battle-field: and the once brilliant Federal army with their confident commander retreated behind the intrenchments at Centreville. The next day (September 1st) General D. H. Hill threatened the direct road to Washington. Pope, who could not accept battle on account of the demoralization of his army, commenced a retreat. A severe storm was in progress and Hill was assaulting him; but night closed in, and the defeated army was glad to take refuge behind the fortifications at Washington. President Lincoln then begged McClellan to take command and defend Washington.

The Maryland Campaign.—General Lee now determined to advance into Maryland, hoping thus to relieve Virginia and to attract the citizens of Maryland to his standard. In this latter hope he was disappointed, as the appearance of the ragged Confederates was not prepossessing enough¹. to induce many of the prosperous Marylanders to leave their comfortable homes.

To oppose General Lee, who had crossed the Potomac September 5th, General McClellan was advancing from

Washington with a force of 100,000 men. The two armies met first at South Mountain, September 14th, where General Lee was finally forced to retire, though he held his position long enough to enable General Jackson to capture Harper's Ferry, with a large number of guns and ammunition and many valuable stores. After this great achievement, General Jackson hastened to join General Lee's army. At Antietam Creek (Sharpsburg), General McClellan attacked the combined forces of Lee and Jackson, September 17th. The conflict raged fiercely all day, and night closed in with the balance in favor of the Confederates, though their army was not one-third as large as that of their opponents. Still, the moral victory lay with the Federals, as General Lee, who succeeded in cleverly eluding General McClellan, was compelled to recross the Potomac into Virginia. Here, in camp near Winchester, he was enabled to give his soldiers a much-needed rest of several weeks.

General McClellan remained in Maryland until November, and then advanced into Virginia. When he reached Warrenton he learned to his amazement that he was relieved of his command, General Burnside having been appointed in his stead. Various reasons are assigned for General McClellan's removal, but the most plausible one was his inactivity. President Lincoln advocated a more aggressive campaign.

In an address to his troops, October 2, 1862, General Lee thus sums up the results of this campaign:

"In reviewing the achievements of the army during the present campaign, the commanding general cannot withhold the expression of his admiration of the indomitable courage it has displayed in battle and the cheerful endurance of privation and hardships on the march.

“Since your great victories around Richmond, you have defeated the enemy at Cedar Mountain, expelled him from the Rappahannock, and after a conflict of three days utterly repulsed him on the plains of Manassas and forced him to take shelter within the fortifications around his capital. Without halting for repose you crossed the Potomac, stormed the heights of Harper’s Ferry, made prisoners of more than eleven thousand six hundred men, and captured upward of seventy pieces of artillery, all their small arms and other munitions of war. While one corps of the army was thus engaged, the other insured its success by arresting at Boonsboro’ the combined armies of the enemy, advancing under their favorite general to the relief of their beleaguered comrades.

“On the field of Sharpsburg, with less than one-third his numbers, you resisted from daylight until dark the whole army of the enemy, and repulsed every attack along his entire front of more than four miles in extent.

“The whole of the following day you stood ready to resume the conflict on the same ground, and retired next morning without molestation across the Potomac.

“Two attempts subsequently made by the enemy to follow you across the river have resulted in his complete discomfiture and his being driven back with loss. Achievements such as these demanded much valor and patriotism. History records few examples of greater fortitude and endurance than this army has exhibited, and I am commissioned by the President to thank you in the name of the Confederate States for the undying fame you have won for their arms.

“Much as you have done, much more remains to be accomplished. The enemy again threatens us with invasion, and to your tried valor and patriotism the country looks with confidence for deliverance and safety. Your past exploits give assurance that this confidence is not misplaced.

“R. E. LEE.

“General Commanding.”

The Battle of Fredericksburg.—General Burnside determined to advance on Richmond by way of Fredericksburg, and thought he had the start of General Lee. But in this he was mistaken, for when he reached Falmouth,

- on the opposite side of the Rappahannock from Fredericksburg, he found Longstreet's division of General Lee's army awaiting him behind his batteries at Fredericksburg. While General Burnside was preparing to resist General Longstreet, General Jackson and the rest of Lee's army reached Fredericksburg. Though Burnside had nearly twice as many men as General Lee, the Confederate general had a much stronger position, as he was entrenched on the hills behind Fredericksburg. On the eleventh of December the Federal army began to cross the Rappahannock, and on the thirteenth the engagement became general. The Federals were driven back with great slaughter every time they attempted to storm the heights occupied by the Confederates. December 15th, General Burnside drew his troops across the river, having lost more than thirteen thousand men, while the Confederate loss was under two thousand. After this disastrous defeat of the Federal forces General Hooker ("Fighting Joe") was appointed to supersede General Burnside.

Summary of the Events of 1862.—From the foregoing account it will be seen that the Confederate forces were almost uniformly successful in Virginia. The attempts of Pope, McClellan, and Burnside to advance on Richmond had been thwarted, General Jackson had defeated four armies in the Valley, and a large amount of ammunition and stores had been captured. On the other hand, the Maryland Campaign had not been successful, and the State of Virginia was becoming more and more exhausted from the severe struggle. Yet, despite all their hardships, the ragged, badly fed, poorly equipped Confederate forces achieved wonderful victories.

In the West the outcome of the struggle was disastrous to the Confederacy. Almost all of Kentucky and Ten-

nessee was now in the hands of the Federals. Further, they had taken New Orleans and had control of the whole of the Mississippi, except the part between Vicksburg and Port Hudson.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is said in general of the war in 1862 in Virginia?
2. In what places in the East was the war carried on at this time?
3. Give an account of Jackson's Valley Campaign?
4. What did he accomplish by his victories?
5. Tell the story of the Monitor and the Merrimac, or Virginia.
6. Who invented the Virginia?
7. What became of her?
8. What made this battle memorable?
9. Who were the commanders on each side in the Peninsula Campaign?
10. Where is the Peninsula, and what was McClellan's plan?
11. Who succeeded General Johnston?
12. What were some of the important battles in this campaign?
13. Which was the bloodiest?
14. What was General Lee aiming to do and how did he succeed?
15. Tell the story of the Second Battle of Manassas.
16. Why did General Lee advance into Maryland?
17. What was the result of the battle of South Mountain?
18. What did General Jackson accomplish at Harper's Ferry?
19. Result of the battle of Sharpsburg (Antietam)?
20. Who commanded on the Federal side and who succeeded him?
21. What were General Burnside's plans, and how did General Lee meet them?
22. Where and when was the decisive battle between the two fought?
23. Who succeeded General Burnside after this battle?
24. What was the condition of Virginia at the close of 1862?
25. Mention the leading events in the war outside of Virginia.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

1863.

BATTLE OF CHANCELLORSVILLE—DEATH OF JACKSON—BATTLE OF
GETTYSBURG—SUMMARY OF EVENTS OF 1863.

The Battle of Chancellorsville.—General Hooker, who, as we have seen, had been appointed to supersede General Burnside, chose nearly the same route to Richmond that had been so fatal to his predecessors. The winter of 1862-63 was so wet that both armies suspended operations until the spring. General Lee had to send Longstreet with about one-third of the Confederate forces to meet the armies advancing against Richmond from the South. Thus he had at Fredericksburg a force of only 60,000 men to oppose 130,000 commanded by General Hooker and encamped along the Rappahannock River. April 27th, General Hooker began his advance across this river at Kelly's Ford, twenty-five miles from Fredericksburg. By May 1st he had massed his entire force at Chancellorsville, ten miles from Fredericksburg. Here General Lee advanced against him, and sent General Jackson to attack the enemy in the rear. After a march of fifteen miles, General Jackson fell upon the unsuspecting enemy May 2d, and put them to flight. By ten o'clock next morning the Confederates were in full possession of the field. The series of engagements between May 2-5 resulted in checking another Federal advance on Richmond.

Death of General Jackson.—The victory at Chancellorsville was dearly bought by the Confederates, for in this battle General Stonewall Jackson was mortally wounded.

In the dusk of the evening of May 2d, he and his staff had ridden beyond his line of battle in order to reconnoitre. As they returned they were mistaken by Jackson's own men for Federal cavalry, and a volley was poured into the party. Two fell dead, and General Jackson was so severely wounded that he died May 10th. Calm and trustful he talked cheerfully of his approaching end, saying it was all right and that he would have his cherished wish of dying on Sunday. Then his mind wandered to the battlefield and he exclaimed: "Tell A. P. Hill to prepare for action! Pass the infantry rapidly to the front! Tell Major Hawks——," and then with a sweet smile he said: "Let us cross over the river and rest under the shade of the trees." The death of Jackson plunged the whole South into mourning. When General Lee learned the sad news he said, "I have lost my right arm," and after the war he declared, "Had I Jackson at Gettysburg I would have won a great victory."

The Turning Point of the War.—After the battles around Fredericksburg, General Lee, with the advice and approval of President Davis, determined to advance northward into Pennsylvania. It was a daring move, and caused at first great panic and consternation throughout the North. But the odds were all against the Confederates. They were in the enemy's country. In the rear they were threatened by General Hooker, who advanced northward in June, and in front of them a large body of troops was collecting under the command of General Meade at Gettysburg. Here the two opposing armies met, and a three days' battle, July 1-3, was fought. On the first two days the Confederates were successful, but on the third they were repulsed with great loss, and General Lee was forced to retreat to Virginia. On the third day General Pickett

made his immortal charge up Cemetery Ridge and planted the Confederate flag in the midst of the Federal cannon. But the triumph was short, as his brigade, already terribly thinned by the deadly fire of the Federals, was soon overpowered and was compelled to retreat. In the three days' battle the total loss on each side exceeded twenty thousand, though the Federal loss was greater than the Confederate. However, the Confederacy received a blow from which it never recovered. If General Meade had realized the extent of his victory, the result might have been even more disastrous. But he failed to reap the fruits of his success, and, to the great chagrin of President Lincoln, allowed General Lee's forces to retreat comparatively unmolested across the Potomac.

Gettysburg is justly regarded as the turning point of the war. Defeated in the attempt to carry the war into the North, the Confederacy from now on was compelled to act on the defensive. Further, all hope that the independence of the Confederacy would be acknowledged by foreign countries was gone. As Gettysburg* was the first noteworthy decisive victory gained by the Federal troops in the East, the moral effect of their success was tremendous throughout the North. Though a few still desired peace with the South, the sentiment was overwhelming for the vigorous prosecution of the war.

After General Lee had crossed the Potomac, he retired finally behind the Rapidan, where he was followed by General Meade. No events of any importance occurred in Virginia during the remaining months of 1863.

Summary of Events in 1863.—The death of General Jackson, the Confederate victories at Chancellorsville and

*It is pleasant to note that July 1-3, 1913, the Blue and the Gray met on the old battle-field and celebrated with the utmost friendliness the semi-centennial of this great conflict.

in the Wilderness, the invasion of Pennsylvania, and the defeat of General Lee at Gettysburg were the important events of the war in the East. In the West, Vicksburg surrendered to General Grant July 4th, and Port Hudson to General Banks July 8th. Thus the whole of the Mississippi was in the hands of the Federals, and the Confederacy was cut in two. In Tennessee, though the Confederates gained the bloody battle of Chickamauga, the forces of General Bragg were compelled to retire into Georgia, and Chattanooga fell into the hands of the Federals. In the eyes of the North, Richmond, Vicksburg, and Chattanooga were the three most important places from a military point of view. Two of these were now in their possession, and they were enabled to concentrate their attention on the Capital of the Confederacy.

Though not so regarded at the time, the most important event of the year was President Lincoln's proclamation, January 1st, emancipating the negroes. After the battle of Sharpsburg he had proclaimed that the negroes would be set free if the Confederate States did not return to the Union in one hundred days. As the South paid no attention to President Lincoln's threat, the Emancipation Proclamation followed, January 1, 1863. The thirteenth amendment to the Constitution legalized this act of the President, which he justified as a military necessity. It was really forced upon him by Northern anti-slavery sentiment.

QUESTIONS.

1. When was the battle of Chancellorsville fought, and who gained the victory?
2. What great Confederate commander was wounded in this battle?
3. What did General Lee say of him?
4. What were General Lee's plans after Chancellorsville?

5. What battle was the turning point of the war, and when was it fought?
 6. What was the most noted incident in this battle?
 7. Why was the Battle of Gettysburg so important?
 8. Where did General Lee go after the defeat at Gettysburg?
 9. What were the chief military events outside of Virginia in 1863?
 10. When and why did President Lincoln issue the Emancipation Proclamation?
-

CHAPTER XXXV.

1864.

CHANGE OF MILITARY POLICY OF FEDERAL GOVERNMENT—OPERATIONS IN THE VALLEY—GENERAL EARLY'S CAMPAIGN—BUTLER AT BERMUDA HUNDRED—GRANT AND LEE IN THE WILDERNESS, SPOTTSYLVANIA, COLD HARBOR—SIEGE OF PETERSBURG—SUMMARY OF EVENTS OF 1864.

Military Policy of the Federal Government.—Before 1864 the Federal Government had pursued an unwise policy in regard to its generals. As soon as the general in command was defeated, he was superseded by another. No less than six Federal generals thus fell from the high office of commander because they failed in the attempt to capture Richmond. In 1864 the Federal Government determined to change their policy and put their faith in one man, giving him all the men and means he asked for. Their choice was a wise one. Early in March they made General U. S. Grant Lieutenant General, the first time this position had been held by any one since the days of Washington, and later on the North placed him at the head of all the armies of the United States.

General Grant had shown at Fort Donelson and elsewhere in the West that obstinate determination which was the secret of his final success. Recognizing the superior

resources of the North, he argued that with an army of five to one he could afford to lose enormously and still have the advantage of his opponent. Though there was considerable opposition to his demand for more troops, the Federal Government supported him loyally, and an army of nearly a million was raised. The main body in the East under General Grant himself was to advance from the Rappahannock, another under General Butler from the southeast, while a third force in two columns was to march up the Shenandoah Valley, unite at Staunton, and finally join Grant and Butler at Richmond. To oppose General Grant, with his one hundred and twenty thousand men, General Lee had about sixty-five thousand.

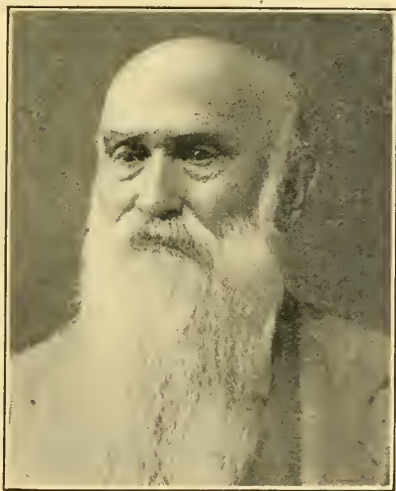
Operations in the Valley.—Before describing the conflict between Lee and Grant a brief account will be given of the operations in the Valley and on the James. The forces under the Federal general, Sigel, advanced up the Valley from Winchester, encountered the Confederates under General Breckenridge at New Market, and were defeated with heavy loss. It was in this battle that the young cadets from the Virginia Military Institute so distinguished themselves that they won the approval of the veterans in the service. The cadets, about two hundred and fifty in number, the majority of whom were only fourteen to nineteen years of age, reached New Market after a long march and a night bivouac in the mud and rain. When General Breckenridge saw how young they were he wished to place them in a safe position. But they begged to be allowed a place in the advance, which was assigned them. Here, under their commander, Colonel Scott Shipp, they maintained their position with the steadiness of veterans, and when ordered to advance leaped into the battery of the enemy, killed the cannoneers, and drove back

the infantry. They captured the guns, bayoneted the Federal colonel who refused to surrender to "a parcel of children," but more than fifty of their gallant little band were killed or wounded. A worthy monument on the Institute campus, the work of the well-known sculptor, Sir Moses Ezekiel, commemorates this noteworthy event in the annals of the institution.

General Sigel after his defeat at New Market was superseded by General David Hunter. General Breckenridge's forces having been withdrawn from the Valley, only a small force of undisciplined troops, under General W. E. Jones, was left in the Valley to oppose Hunter's advance. These troops were defeated by Hunter at Port Republic. Hunter's aim was to devastate the Valley and destroy the railroad at Lynchburg. Reinforced by the Federal cavalry leaders, Crook and Averill, he burned crops and dwelling houses along the line of his march, and set on fire the buildings of the Virginia Military Institute at Lexington. Finding Lynchburg occupied by Generals Early and Breckenridge, he retreated, was overtaken by Early at Salem, defeated, and driven back to the Ohio River.

Early's Campaign.—After this retreat of General Hunter, General Early, with twelve thousand men, marched rapidly down the valley, crossed the Potomac at Shepherdstown, and advanced to Sharpsburg. He aimed to threaten Washington and thus draw away some of the Federal forces that were opposing General Lee. General Early's rapid advance so alarmed the authorities at Washington that they recalled nearly ten thousand of Grant's troops to the relief of the Capital. Meantime, General Early had defeated General Lew Wallace at the Monocacy River, near Frederick, Maryland, and had come within sight of the dome of the Capitol. If he had been aware

of the weakness of the defences at Washington and the lack of leadership in the Federal forces he might have made a dash into Washington and have done great damage. But, deeming his forces inadequate, he retired into Virginia the night of July 12th, and encamped near Winchester, having lost only three thousand men in this remarkable campaign.



GENERAL JUBAL A. EARLY.

General Grant, in order to drive General Early out of the Valley, sent General Sheridan with a large force against the Confederate commander. Before the arrival of Sheridan a detachment of Early's forces under General Ramseur had been defeated at Newtown. Later, in conjunction with Generals Breckenridge, Rhodes, Gordon, and Ramseur, he gained a great victory over Generals Crook and Averill near Kernstown. General Early, outnumbered five to one when General Sheridan arrived, was compelled to retreat before the superior forces of his opponent.

Though Early's resistance was stubborn, he was defeated at Winchester, Fisher's Hill, and Cedar Creek, and finally compelled to retire to Staunton. Sheridan then proceeded to lay waste the Valley until, as he said in his report, the destruction was so entire "that a crow flying across the Valley must carry its own rations."

Butler "bottled up."—Let us now return to the army before Petersburg. Butler had moved up from Gloucester Point and, on the 6th of May, had taken possession with thirty thousand men of Bermuda Hundred, a small tongue of land in shape not unlike a bottle, made by the winding of the James River. Here he established his base of supplies, which were brought up the river, fortified the neck of the bottle, and thought that he was entirely safe. Beauregard, who had been ordered from the South, took command of the troops at Petersburg on the 10th of May. On the 16th a battle ensued with the forces under Butler, in which Butler was defeated and was forced to retire within his *bottle*, which General Beauregard effectually corked and sealed by building a line of fortifications in front of those made by Butler, making it impossible for him to get out by land. General Grant said General Butler had allowed himself to be bottled up.

Grant and Lee.—But these minor struggles sink into insignificance in comparison with the final contest between the two great leaders, Grant and Lee. General Grant, with an army more than double the forces of General Lee, determined to carry on a "hammering campaign" by attacking his opponent repeatedly, and thus exhausting the strength and resources of the Confederate army. To carry out his design the Federal general crossed the Rapidan May 4th, expecting to attack the flank of General Lee's army. General Lee, however, had anticipated him, and

both armies plunged into the region known as the Wilderness, near Chancellorsville. Here engagements occurred on the fifth and sixth, in which the Confederates were successful. From the eighth to the twentieth of May, assault after assault was made upon General Lee's lines near Spottsylvania Court-House. At a projecting point in the Confederate earthworks, known afterwards as the "Bloody Angle," the carnage was fearful on both sides, but the Federal forces were unable to break through the Confederate lines. On June 3d the two armies confronted each other at Cold Harbor, the scene of a former battle in 1862, but the Confederates could not be driven from their earthworks. In this battle the Federal loss was so great that the soldiers of Grant's army refused to make another assault. General Grant was forced, therefore, to change his plans. Moving to the left of the Confederate army, he crossed the James and determined to lay siege to Petersburg.

In this campaign of a month the Federals lost more troops than General Lee had in his whole army. Though the Confederate loss was only about one-third as great as the Federal, General Grant, by his hammering campaign, was accomplishing his purpose even in defeat. The Confederate ranks could never be filled up, as the South was becoming more and more exhausted from the long and unequal struggle. General Lee's achievements during this wonderful campaign would alone make him one of the most famous generals of modern times. General Grant, with characteristic honesty, admitted the mistakes that he had made, especially the needless struggle at Cold Harbor. It must be confessed, however, that his general policy was a wise one, as General Lee's depleted army was unable afterwards to take the offensive, but felt obliged to retire within the lines at Richmond.

Siege of Petersburg.—Petersburg was the key to Richmond. This General Grant recognized, and ordered General Butler to advance against the city, then very inadequately garrisoned. But Beauregard anticipated him, and was enabled to hold the city three days until the arrival of General Lee's troops. The Confederates then so strongly entrenched themselves that General Grant, at the suggestion of General Burnside, determined to undermine part of the Confederate works and blow them up. The mine was exploded July 30th, but in the effort to make their way through the breach in the Confederate lines the Federal troops were attacked right and left and in front, and killed by the thousands. The Crater, a hole made by the explosion, became a hideous "slaughter pen." The siege of Petersburg continued for ten months. At the close of the year 1864, Grant's army was still investing the city. Though he had been repulsed repeatedly, the numbers of the Confederates were slowly decreasing. By the end of the year, General Lee had less than forty thousand troops, and Grant was in possession of one of the main lines of railway that connected Richmond with the South.

Summary of Events in 1864.—At the close of 1864 the condition of the Confederacy was so desperate that it seems strange to us now that neither side foresaw that the end was near at hand. We have followed the course of events in Virginia, noting Early's dash towards Washington and subsequent expulsion from the Valley by Sheridan, the fate of Butler at Bermuda Hundred, the campaign of Grant against Lee in the Wilderness, at Cold Harbor, and finally at Petersburg. Outside of Virginia the Confederacy met with a succession of disasters. General Sherman, who succeeded General Grant at Vicksburg, and who had charge

of operations west of the Alleghanies, advanced through Mississippi and Alabama against General Johnston in Georgia. Johnston, because of his defensive tactics, now recognized as the wisest under the circumstances, was unfortunately superseded by General Hood, who, after having sustained several defeats, was finally forced to leave Atlanta, which fell into the hands of Sherman September 1st. Sherman, having burned Atlanta, then marched through Georgia, leaving ruin and desolation behind him, and took Savannah at the close of the year. General Hood, having advanced into Tennessee, was defeated with great loss by General Thomas at Nashville. Thus, at the close of the year, only four States were left to the Confederacy—Virginia, Florida, North and South Carolina—and there were not enough available troops to oppose Sherman in his march through the two latter States to join Grant in Virginia.

QUESTIONS.

1. What change did the Federal Government make in its military policy in 1864, and why?
2. Whom did they choose as the head of all their armies, and why?
3. What was his policy?
4. What were the chief divisions of the Federal forces in Virginia, and what was the aim of each?
5. Tell the story of the Battle of New Market.
6. Describe Hunter's Campaign.
7. Describe General Early's Campaign.
8. Who finally defeated General Early in the Valley?
9. What was this general's policy?
10. How and where was Butler "bottled up"?
11. What were the chief events of the Campaign of Grant against Lee up to the siege of Petersburg?
12. Relate the chief events connected with the siege of Petersburg.
13. What were the most important events outside of Virginia?

CHAPTER XXVI.

1865.

THE SURRENDER AT APPOMATTOX—CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR—
RESULTS OF THE WAR—LOSS OF WEST VIRGINIA.

The Surrender at Appomattox.—At the close of 1864 General Grant's large army was investing Petersburg, while General Lee, with less than forty thousand men, was still holding out against his opponent. In the spring he saw that his force was too small to defend Richmond and Petersburg, hence he left the latter city April 2d, in the dead of night, with the intention of coöperating with General Johnston, who was then in North Carolina. When Lee reached Amelia Court-House he found that the supplies which were to meet him at that place had been sent by mistake to Richmond. He lost a day, therefore, in the attempt to collect some scanty provisions for his starving troops. Finding that Grant was cutting off his retreat to the South, Lee then directed his march towards Lynchburg. By the time he reached Appomattox Court-House he found himself completely surrounded by Grant's forces, and was compelled to surrender April 9, 1865. The terms of surrender were signed at the house of Mr. Wilmer McLean, near the Court-House. Southern soldiers were allowed to return home on parole, and men and officers were allowed to keep their horses, an important concession, as most of the Confederates were farmers. General Grant displayed great generosity and consideration to his foes at Appomattox, as he had done at Vicksburg. However, he did not decline to receive the sword of Lee, as is so often

asserted. It was not offered to him, as all officers, by the terms of the surrender, were allowed to retain their sidearms.

General Lee was even greater, if possible, in the hour of defeat than he had been in the hour of victory. After the papers had all been signed, he rode through the ranks of the men whom he had led to so many victories, and these veterans, forgetting their own bitter anguish, rushed up to their old chief and, choking with emotion, vied with each other for the honor of touching his hand. With tears streaming down his cheeks, he said, "My men, we have fought through the war together; I have done the best I could for you." He then bade them to return to their homes and prove themselves as worthy in peace as they had been in war. By example and by precept, from the day of the surrender till his death, he did everything in his power to induce the people of the South to be as loyal to the United States as they had been to the Confederacy.

Northern Testimony.—In closing the account of the war let us hear northern testimony to the gallantry of the Army of Northern Virginia. "If they drank the bitter draught of defeat, it was mollified by the consciousness of many triumphs. If the victors could recall a Malvern Hill, an Antietam, a Gettysburg, a Five Forks, the vanquished could recall a Manassas, a Fredericksburg, a Chancellorsville, a Cold Harbor. If at length the Army of Northern Virginia fell before the massive power of the North, yet what vitality it had shown! How terrible had been the struggle! How many hundreds of brave men fell before that result could be achieved!" But, in justice to the other side, we too must make our acknowledgment of the magnanimity of the victorious general. He not only gave security of life and liberty to the soldiers who

surrendered to him, but when afterwards the authorities at Washington wished to take back this promise and bring Lee and the other leaders to trial as traitors against the government, General Grant, to his honor be it spoken, is said to have threatened to give up his sword and resign his commission if the government refused to fulfil the promises he had made.

Closing Events of the War.—After Sherman had taken Savannah in December, 1864, he marched through South Carolina, burned Columbia, and did even more damage in this State than he had done in Georgia. General Hardee was forced to evacuate Charleston, but the city, which had been subjected to repeated attacks during the war, was now but a wreck of its former self. In January, Fort Fisher, near Wilmington, North Carolina, the last of the Confederate forts to hold out, was taken, and thus a complete blockade was established. Nine days after the surrender at Appomattox, General Johnston surrendered in North Carolina to General Sherman. Though there were a few scattering, minor conflicts after this, the war was really at an end.

Results of the War.—The war solved two problems whose solution had vexed the country since the day of the Constitutional Convention. These were peaceable secession and slavery. Whatever may have been the views held by the founders of the government and their successors as to the rights of the States to withdraw from the original compact that led to the Union, secession now means revolution, and, according to one of the highest authorities on Constitutional law, no State can peaceably secede or be forcibly divided.

As we have seen, President Lincoln had no intention of freeing the slaves when the war began. "Military neces-

sity," the growth of Northern sentiment against slavery, the desire to weaken the South, to strengthen the North in the eyes of Europe, and his own honest conviction that slavery was wrong, all conspired to induce him to issue his Emancipation Proclamation September 22, 1862, which went into effect January 1, 1863. The thirteenth amendment to the Constitution legalized this proclamation, the fourteenth gives the negroes equal rights with the white man, including the right to vote, the fifteenth binds the States to observe these laws perpetually. The conquered States were not allowed the privilege of citizens until they accepted these amendments. Freedom to the negro was a gift, but the ability to use this freedom wisely is a growth. There is every disposition in Virginia and throughout the South to accord the full right of suffrage to negroes whose education or material prosperity enables them to exercise this right with discrimination.

The war left Virginia terribly impoverished. It had been waged in nearly every part of the State. Consequently, farms were laid waste, mills and dwellings were destroyed, banks were not in operation, and there was little or no money. Freeing the slaves deprived their owners of thousands of dollars of valuable property, and the negroes were so demoralized that many of them became idle and vicious.

Loss of West Virginia.—Then, too, Virginia, which had voluntarily given up her great Northwestern domain to the Union, lost during the war more than one-third of her territory when West Virginia was made a State. We have already referred to this fact, but the event is so important in the history of Virginia that it is well to explain it more fully. Most of West Virginia is separated from the rest of the mother State by the Alleghany

Mountains, which constitute a natural barrier between the two. This western part of the original State was far away from the Capital and was settled largely by immigrants from the North and West. They had different interests from the Virginians east of the mountains, and complained that they were neglected by the Legislature at Richmond. As they had fewer slaves, they were naturally not so much interested in the slavery question. Hence, when Virginia seceded in April, 1861, it is not surprising that West Virginia was divided in sentiment. Many gallant soldiers and able officers obeyed the call of the State, and served in the Confederate army. Those who favored the Federal cause called a convention at Clarksburg in June, 1861, and elected Francis H. Pierpont governor of "the re-organized State of Virginia." In July, two United States Senators were elected, and in October an election was held in which a large majority of the voters declared in favor of the formation of a new State. This State was first named Kanawha, but the name was afterwards changed to West Virginia. In November, 1861, another Convention, which met at Wheeling, framed a Constitution which was ratified by the people May 3, 1862.

When the question of the admission of West Virginia as a State came before Congress it was warmly debated. Opponents of admission contended that a State could not be divided without the consent of its legislature, and that advocates of the new State represented only a small part of the territory and of the population of Virginia. Advocates of admission contended that the part of Virginia loyal to the Union was the real State, the rest of Virginia having no existence because it had committed treason. The latter party triumphed by the power of votes, rather than through argument. West Virginia was really

wrested from Virginia as a war measure, and only as a war measure was the creation of this new State justifiable. We can now see that it is best for both States that they are divided, as their interests are so different. West Virginia was finally admitted into the Union in June, 1863. When the war was over, Virginia raised a protest against this dismemberment, but it was of no avail. She then tried to regain the two magnificent counties, Berkeley and Jefferson, but in this also she failed. The only contest remaining between the mother and daughter is about the division of the debt incurred before the war. In the meantime, West Virginia is growing, cities are springing up, her resources are rapidly developing, railroads are being built, and she bids fair in the future to be one of the richest States in the Union.

QUESTIONS.

1. Relate the circumstances immediately leading up to the surrender of General Lee.
2. When did this occur?
3. What is said of the conduct of Generals Lee and Grant at this time?
4. What were the chief closing events of the war outside of Virginia?
5. What two long-disputed questions did the war solve?
6. When and why did President Lincoln free the slaves?
7. What are the three amendments to the Constitution relative to the negroes, and what is the substance of each of these?
8. Condition of Virginia after the war?
9. Relate the circumstances that caused West Virginia to be separated from Virginia.
10. Present prospects of West Virginia.

PERIOD V: VIRGINIA SINCE THE CIVIL WAR, 1865-1914.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

1865-1890.

DIVISIONS OF THE CHAPTER—MURDER OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN—DISPUTES BETWEEN PRESIDENT JOHNSON AND CONGRESS—VIRGINIA UNDER MILITARY GOVERNMENT—DISASTER AT THE CAPITOL—DEATH OF GENERAL LEE—GOVERNORS OF VIRGINIA SINCE 1873.

Virginia from 1865 to 1890.—The period which this chapter embraces may be divided into two sections: First, from 1865 to 1870, during which the reconstruction of the State engaged the attention of the people, and, second, from 1870 to 1890, when the State debt was the absorbing object of interest. The first period commences with the surrender of Lee's army at Appomattox, when every branch of business was utterly prostrate. The State had a debt of over forty millions, the farms were fenceless, the stock and farming utensils all gone; there was no money in the treasury and none in private pockets, and the government was in the hands of her enemies, who held her in subjection with a rod of iron.

The Murder of President Lincoln.—Unfortunately for the South, President Lincoln was shot in Ford's Theatre, Washington, April 14, 1865, by a fanatical actor, John Wilkes Booth, and died the next morning. For this act the South was of course in no way responsible, but she had to suffer for it, as she was suspected of having instigated the assassination. Under Lincoln's wise rule the reconstruction of the Southern States would have been rapidly accomplished. When he was inaugurated for the

second time in March, 1865, he had promised to act with "malice towards none, with charity for all." He held the view that a State could not secede from the Union, and as early as 1863 had proclaimed that "any seceded State should be received into the Union whenever one-tenth of its voters" had taken the oath of allegiance to the United States and had established a State government. Had this wise policy been pursued the Union would speedily have been reformed.

Disputes between President Johnson and Congress.—

President Lincoln was succeeded by Vice-President Andrew Johnson, a State Rights Union Democrat from Tennessee. President Johnson followed Lincoln's policy in regard to the readmission of the seceded States, and by August, 1865, all except Texas were ready for representation in Congress. Through the votes of these States with provisional governments, the thirteenth amendment was adopted.

Owing not so much to his liberal policy towards the seceding States as his unwise advocacy of this policy, President Johnson became involved in a general quarrel with Congress, which continued during his whole administration. As the dominant radical Anti-Southern party had the necessary two-thirds majority in Congress, many harsh measures for the reconstruction of the Southern States were passed over the President's veto. They were treated like conquered provinces. President Johnson's provisional governments were ignored, and the South was divided into military districts. The governors of these appointed the provisional governors of the States. Citizens who wished to vote were required to take an "ironclad oath" that they had not borne arms against the United States and had given no aid to the Confederacy. This restricted the vot-

ing population mainly to negroes and emigrants from the North, known as "Carpet-baggers." As these white men from the North and disreputable Southerners known as "Scalawags" completely dominated the ignorant negroes, a riot of reckless misrule followed.

Under Military Government.—Virginia, on account of her smaller negro population, did not suffer so much as some of her sister States in the South. General Schofield was appointed first military governor of District No. 1 (Virginia) in 1867. Governor Pierpont had been re-elected Governor of Virginia in 1864, so his term did not expire until 1868. Schofield was succeeded by General Stoneman, and in 1869 Virginia adopted her new constitution. That accomplished, Gilbert C. Walker was elected governor by the people. He was a Northern man and a Republican, but was elected by the Democrats. General Grant, then the President, insisted that the vote of the people should be untrammelled. The new governor proved very acceptable in his office. State officers and members of the Legislature were elected, and in 1870 delegates to the Congress of the United States were admitted from Virginia, and the noble old Commonwealth was restored to her place in the family of States.

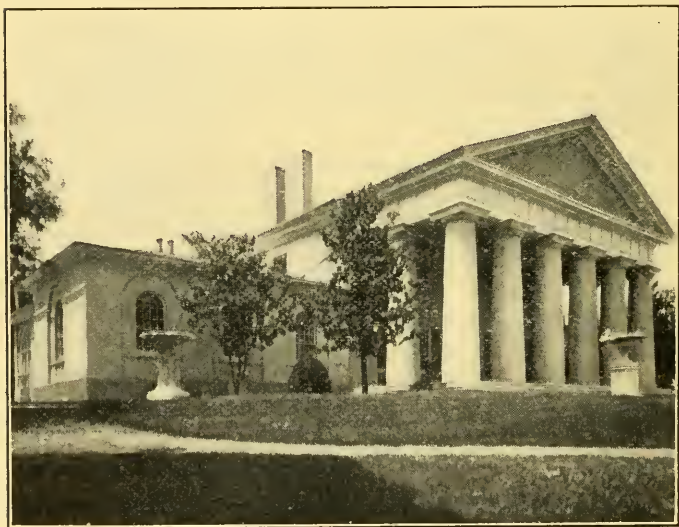
A Dreadful Disaster.—The year 1870, which saw Virginia restored to her rights under the Constitution, was a year of disaster and sorrow. A controversy was in progress in the city of Richmond between Chahoon and Ellyson, the first having been appointed mayor of the city by the military governor, while the latter was elected by the people. Each held the office in different parts of the city, appointed his officers, and discharged his duties, causing, of course, great confusion in business. The decision of the courts proving unsatisfactory, at length they agreed

to submit the matter to the Court of Appeals, which met in the second story of the Capitol. A great crowd of people assembled to hear the verdict, which was in favor of the election by the people. This crowd included many ladies. Suddenly the crowded gallery gave way, and with its human freight fell to the floor, which also gave way beneath it, and all were dashed with the mass of *débris* into the legislative hall, in which the Legislature would have assembled in a few moments. Sixty were killed and one hundred and twenty wounded, among them some of the most valuable citizens of the State. This sad accident, which plunged the State into the deepest sorrow, occurred April 27, 1870.

Death of General Lee.—The following September a freshet occurred in the James and Shenandoah Rivers, which swept away from the impoverished people five million dollars' worth of property. On October the 12th of this year died General Robert E. Lee, the Christian soldier and gentleman.

After the surrender, he returned to Richmond, where his family awaited him, and casting aside his military life like a garment, in calm resignation he took up the every-day life left to him. This must have been a sore trial to the brave soldier, not only for the ordinary reasons which will readily occur to you, but because he had been in the army since his boyhood, and it is hard when a man has lived over half a century to change the habits formed in youth. But no one ever heard a murmur from him. The writer of these pages well remembers what a blessing his counsel was to the young men returning from the army. Disappointed and reckless, they imagined all was lost with the Confederacy, and were ready to desert home and friends rather than live under the government against which they had fought for four years.

Many of them did leave,—some for South America. Some prominent officers became distinguished in the Egyptian army, and more than one has made a name in the army of France. Mr. Benjamin, a member of the Confederate cabinet, escaped when President Davis was made a prisoner, and gained both honors and wealth in the service of the Queen of England. Few of the returned heroes failed to go and see “Old Mars Robert,” as they affection-



ARLINGTON HOUSE, HOME OF GEN. ROBERT E. LEE.

ately called him, and to each he said, “Stick to your State. Accept the situation. You have fought for her like a brave man, now work for her like a brave man.”

He was an object of great curiosity to the soldiers of the Federal army who were in Richmond. Every Sunday when he went to St. Paul’s Church, the crowd of boys in blue would part to let him pass, and I have often

thought what a trial this must have been to a proud, sensitive nature like his; but no one ever heard him say so. He accepted this as he did all the rest, with calm dignity. Many lucrative and responsible positions were offered him, but he refused them all to accept the presidency of Washington College at Lexington, where he lived and died beloved and honored by all.

An Impressive Ceremony.—The name of this institution was changed from “Washington College” to “Washington and Lee University” in his honor, and the noted Virginia sculptor, Edward Valentine, of Richmond, was employed by the Lee Memorial Association to prepare a monument to mark his grave. How nobly he has fulfilled the trust committed to him all can testify who have seen the magnificent recumbent statue of the hero, which rests above the grave where he lies with his noble wife beside him. He is represented as lying on his soldier’s camp-bed with his blanket draping his form. The likeness is perfect. The day the monument was unveiled, as General A. L. Long in his charming life of Lee relates, “the whole immense procession went to the cemetery and placed immortelles on the graves of the soldiers, and at the head of Stonewall Jackson’s grave placed a bronze memorial tablet. The Virginia orator, John W. Daniel, delivered an oration which elicited praise from the press of the whole country. Father Ryan recited his famous poem, ‘The Sword of Lee.’ Then the multitude repaired to the mausoleum, where Miss Julia Jackson, the daughter of Stonewall Jackson, drew back the curtain from the exquisite marble figure.”

Political Affairs.—In 1873, General Kemper, a former officer in the Confederate army, was elected governor. He was succeeded in 1878 by Colonel Frederick W. M. Holliday, who had given an arm to the Confederate service. In

1882, Colonel William E. Cameron, also an ex-Confederate, became governor. In 1886 he was succeeded by General Fitzhugh Lee, a nephew of General R. E. Lee, and whom you have known in these pages as one of the distinguished cavalry officers in the Confederate service. In 1890, Captain Philip W. McKinney, who had served through the war under General J. E. B. Stuart and General Fitzhugh Lee, entered upon the duties of the office.

It was natural for Virginia to confer the highest office in her gift upon those who had fought so bravely for her in the Civil War. Though it anticipates our narrative somewhat, it may be well to give here the governors that succeeded these. They were:

Charles T. O'Ferrall (1894-98).

J. Hoge Tyler (1898-1902).

Andrew J. Montague (1902-1906).

Claude A. Swanson (1906-1910).

Charles Hodges Mann (1910-1914).

The present governor, Henry C. Stuart, was inaugurated in February, 1914. Since 1874 all of the governors except one have been Democrats. Governor Cameron was called a Readjuster, because he was elected by the party in favor of a readjustment of the State debt. In the next chapter will be given an account of the Readjustment Movement and of the settlement of the State Debt.

QUESTIONS.

1. Into what two periods is this chapter divided?
2. What was the condition of Virginia in 1865?
3. When and by whom was President Lincoln assassinated?
4. What was the effect of this crime?
5. What was his reconstruction policy?
6. Who succeeded President Lincoln, and what was his policy?
7. Why was President Johnson unable to carry out his policy?

8. What policy finally prevailed?
 9. How did it affect Virginia?
 10. When did Virginia adopt the New Constitution?
 11. When were her delegates admitted to Congress?
 12. What dreadful disaster occurred in 1870 at Richmond?
 13. Give an account of General Lee's life after the close of the war.
 14. Name the governors of Virginia from 1873-1914.
 15. How many of these were Democrats?
 16. Give an account of the separation of West Virginia from Virginia.
-

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

1890-1914.

THE STATE DEBT—THE READJUSTER MOVEMENT—EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS—LITERARY PROGRESS—MATERIAL PROSPERITY—THE SPANISH WAR—THE JAMESTOWN EXPOSITION—THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION—VIRGINIA, PAST AND PRESENT.

The State Debt.—Before the war, Virginia was anxious to develop the resources of the Valley, the Southwest, and what is now West Virginia, and connect these portions of the State by canals and railroads with Richmond, Norfolk, and Newport News. To accomplish these purposes she had to incur a large debt amounting by January 1, 1861, to nearly thirty-four millions of dollars. About two-thirds of this debt was contracted between the years 1850 to 1861. The extreme western counties were almost unanimously in favor of incurring this debt, and the eastern counties were opposed to it.

When West Virginia was made a State, Virginia felt that the new State ought to pay her part of this debt. West Virginia, in her first constitution and several times afterwards, declared that it was incumbent upon her to pay her just proportion of this debt, and the debates in

Congress show that she would not have been admitted into the Union if she had not acknowledged this just obligation.

But though there were a number of conferences after the war between the two States they were never able to decide satisfactorily the amount due from each. The matter finally came before the Supreme Court of the United States, and in October, 1910, this court decided that West Virginia's share of this debt was a little over seven millions of dollars. This decision, however, settled only the principal of the debt. The question of the amount of interest due is still (February, 1914) unsettled.

The Readjuster Movement.—The last unreconstructed legislature of Virginia met in December, 1865, and voted unanimously to pay the whole of the ante-bellum debt, about one-third of which they thought to be West Virginia's portion. But Virginia was so impoverished by the war, that in 1871 she decided to pay only two-thirds of her debt. Even this amount seemed too large to many in the State, and those who wished to scale the debt still further were called Readjusters. By uniting with the Republicans they succeeded in carrying the legislature, and in 1881 elected William E. Cameron governor, and General Mahone United States Senator. By the action of the Readjusters the debt was scaled even more than in 1871. After over twenty years of controversy, the debt question, so far as Virginia was concerned, was settled in 1892 by an agreement which the creditors accepted as satisfactory. The State now (1914) owes about twenty-four millions of dollars.

The Boom Period.—In 1890 there occurred a remarkable era of speculative adventure in laying off and promoting new towns, which came to be known as "booming." Not since "the Mississippi Bubble" of John Law, in 1718-1720,

has speculation run so riot in any part of this country. Old fields near small villages were laid off into imaginary cities, with streets, avenues, and boulevards of great dimensions; and such was the greed to make money quickly that town lots, where there were no towns except on paper, were sold, and several times resold on the same day, at fabulous prices. Large improvements were projected in the way of manufactories, electric plants, parks, and all the adornments and conveniences of rich and populous cities. Of course the bubble soon burst, and much loss followed; yet not without some compensation in a few localities favored by nature. The rich mineral wealth of Southwest Virginia and the James River Valley was developed as one result of the boom, and railroad and telephone lines—both considered important factors in modern civilization—were extended. In many places where there had been only straggling villages, thriving towns sprang up, many of which became and have remained important centers of industrial and commercial enterprise, while all the larger cities felt to a greater or less extent the stimulus of the speculative movement.

Norfolk and Newport News, on the seaboard, were great railroad systems center, became important export towns for the products of the West and the South, and especially of the teeming coal mines of Virginia and West Virginia. Coke ovens, whose fires are never permitted to go out, extend for miles along the lines of the great trunk railroads that reach deep water at these ports, where the ships of the world come for fuel, and where the navies of all the nations can ride safely at anchor in any storm.

Burning of the University.—The worst calamity that befell the State during this period was the destruction of a part of the buildings of the University of Virginia, the foster-child of Thomas Jefferson. On the 27th of October,

1895, the great Public Hall, containing among many other things of inestimable value the famous painting known as "The School of Athens" copied from Raphael's great fresco in the Vatican, was wholly destroyed by fire, and the interior of the beautiful Rotunda, with a large portion of the invaluable library, was also consumed by the flames. The injuries to the buildings were promptly repaired, and in the restoration, Jefferson's architectural plans were more closely followed. The restored Rotunda and the three new buildings at the southern end of the quadrangle form what is generally acknowledged to be one of the most beautiful and artistic group of university buildings in the world.

"The School of Athens" has been restored as a fresco, in place of the canvas, special permission to copy the original having been graciously granted by Pope Leo. The Library has also been reestablished, and is now embellished with a bust of Edgar Allan Poe, who was educated at the University, and with busts and portraits of some of its most eminent professors and students.

The University at Present.—Though the fire cost the University books, documents, and other articles of priceless value, this calamity was otherwise a blessing in disguise. Friends of the institution in and out of Virginia rallied to its support, and the legislature nobly responded to the needs of the institution. In 1904, a radical change was made in the government of the University. Up to this time it had been a "republic of scholars," with only a chairman, selected from the faculty, at its head. The Board of Visitors, with the consent of the legislature, decided that it would be wise to elect a president. They elected as the first president of the institution Edwin A. Alderman, who before this had been the head of the University of North Carolina and of Tulane University at

New Orleans. The wisdom of this change of government has been abundantly justified. The endowment has been increased over a million, new professorships have been added, and the institution to-day occupies a more commanding position than ever in the State and in the educational world.

Other Higher Institutions of Learning.—Next to the University of Virginia in wealth and to William and Mary in age is the Washington and Lee University at Lexington, an institution endowed by George Washington, whose first president after the war was General Robert E. Lee. Other noteworthy institutions are the Virginia Polytechnic Institute at Blacksburg, the Virginia Military Institute—"The West Point of the South"—at Lexington, the Randolph-Macon College at Ashland, the Randolph-Macon Woman's College at Lynchburg, Hampden-Sidney in Prince Edward County, Roanoke College at Salem, and, oldest of all, historic William and Mary at Williamsburg. The Normal and Industrial Institute of more than a thousand students, both sexes, at Hampton, is one of the leading higher institutions for negroes in the South. Besides these there are many others that are advancing the cause of the higher education of young men and women in the State. Virginia is richer in institutions of this kind than any other Southern State.

The Public-School System.—The University of Virginia is considered the head of the public-school system in the State. Though first formulated by Jefferson in 1779, this system, in its present form, originated in the fertile brain of Rev. William H. Ruffner, D. D., of Lexington, Virginia. Some provision had been made for the education of the poorer white children since 1808, and by 1860 over thirty thousand were educated by the State. But the

present organization of the public-school system is due to Doctor Ruffner, who was appointed Superintendent of Public Instruction in 1870 and held this office for twelve years. During this time the number of public-school children increased fourfold, and the money spent on them increased threefold. There are now about ten thousand public schools for whites and blacks in Virginia, and more than two millions are spent annually for their support.

The Normal Schools.—Schools for teaching the teachers how to teach are a comparatively recent development in modern education. Besides courses of this kind given at William and Mary, the University of Virginia, and other institutions, the State has established excellent Normal Schools for Women, the oldest and largest being at Farmville, three others, established within the last ten years, being at Fredericksburg, Harrisonburg, and Radford. But perhaps the most noteworthy recent advance made in education is the increase of well-equipped high schools. The number of these that give the full four years' course is increasing steadily. Virginia has always been noted for her private schools of high rank. With the growth of interest in education in all its branches, the prosperity of the State is intimately connected, and our legislators are seeing this more and more clearly every year.

Literary Progress.—Virginia has made distinct progress in the field of literature. Virginians of to-day can read in a new and sumptuous edition the "Westover Manuscripts" of Colonel William Byrd—a classic of the Colonial period. It is to be regretted that the only edition of the writings of Dr. George W. Bagby, the first and the foremost interpreter of Virginian character and customs, has been exhausted.

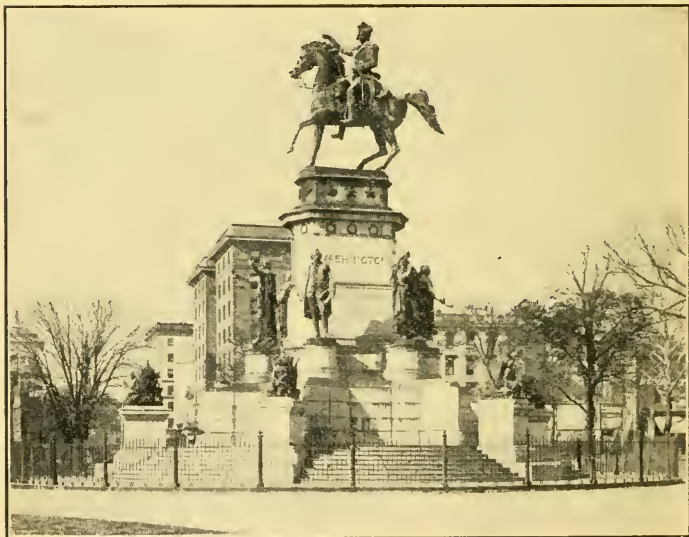
Passing by the writings of John Taylor, of Caroline, of George Fitzhugh, of Albert Taylor Bledsoe, of John R. Thompson, of John Esten Cooke, and of many others worthy to be named, as belonging to a past era, it remains a matter of pride to mention the following Virginian authors: Dr. Alexander Brown, historian; William Wirt Henry, biographer of his grandfather, Patrick Henry; Philip A. Bruce, historian; Father Tabb, poet; Armistead C. Gordon, poet, novelist, and short-story writer; the distinguished novelists Thomas Nelson Page, Mary Johnston, Ellen Glasgow, Amelie Rives, Mollie Elliott Seawell, and many others. Nor ought the writings of John Randolph Tucker, on the Constitution, and the standard law text-books of John B. Minor, John W. Daniel, and of Robt. T. Barton, to be omitted in any mention of Virginian authors. The writings of Washington, Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe have been compiled, edited, and published by capable scholars, and are still accepted as leading texts on the science of government and statecraft.

Monuments and Memorials.—On the 29th day of May, 1890, a splendid equestrian statue of General Robert E. Lee—the work of the eminent French artist Mercier—was unveiled at Richmond in the presence of the largest body of ex-Confederates that has assembled since the close of the Civil War. Capable critics pronounce the statue a fine work of art.

A handsome shaft, designed after Pompey's Pillar, and known as the Soldiers' and Sailors' Monument, was dedicated with imposing ceremonies in 1894 in Richmond, where are also to be seen statues of "Stonewall" Jackson, A. P. Hill, and others. On May 31st and June 1st, 1907, statues of J. E. B. Stuart and Jefferson Davis were unveiled at Richmond in the presence of an immense crowd. Many cities and counties have also erected monuments.

more or less imposing, to their Confederate dead. The memorials are to be regarded as tributes of affection and tokens of loyalty to the past: in no sense as an expression of disloyalty to the existing order.

But the most conspicuous of all the monuments in Virginia is the one by Crawford in the Capitol Square, Rich-



MONUMENT AT CAPITOL SQUARE, RICHMOND, VIRGINIA.

mond. This was erected to the memory of the great men of the Revolutionary period. A bronze equestrian statue of Washington rises from a pedestal of granite, and around him, each on a separate pedestal, are placed magnificent bronze statutes of these Virginians of the past. Among them is Jefferson, with the Declaration of Independence in his hand: Mason, with the Bill of Rights: Chief-Justice Marshall, with a book of law; and Patrick

Henry, the soldier orator, with his sword extended. The statue of John Marshall, Virginia's most celebrated jurist, arrived in Richmond just at the opening of the war, too late to be placed upon its pedestal. It remained unpacked in the basement of the Capitol until the war closed, and while Virginia was Military District No. 1 it was placed in position. The Colonial Dames, the Daughters of the American Revolution, the Daughters of the Confederacy, and the Society for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, have been conspicuous in awakening an interest in Virginia's historic past.

The Jamestown Exposition.—The progressive condition of the State made it possible for her to celebrate the three-hundredth anniversary of the foundation of Virginia in fitting style. General Fitzhugh Lee was the first president of the Jamestown Exposition, but he died in 1905, after doing valuable work. The Exposition was opened on April 26, 1907, by President Roosevelt in the presence of a notable assemblage and with a great military and naval display. The Jamestown Exposition was one of the most beautiful ever held; its unsurpassed site on Hampton Roads, its tasteful and handsome buildings, and its magnificent electrical display will make it notable among the great expositions of the United States.

Material Progress.—The varied and excellent exhibits at this exposition demonstrated to the world that the South had recovered almost entirely from the disastrous effects of the war and the reconstruction periods. They showed, too, that Virginia was well in the forefront of the progressive States. No State in the Union of similar area is as noted for the variety of her resources. Her mineral wealth is believed to be practically inexhaustible. Her mineral springs continue to be the beneficent foun-

tains of health. Her fruits, notably the far-famed Albemarle pippins, are regularly exported for the tables of royalty. Her wines are in active competition with the imported clarets. Her beef cattle, fattened on the green pastures of the Great Valley and the Southwest, are exported by the shipload. Her oyster bottoms cover thousands of acres, and are susceptible of great development. Manufactures, already flourishing, are being extended year after year: the largest dry dock and one of the largest shipyards on the continent are located at Newport News, a mammoth locomotive-works plant at Richmond and the most extensive zinc works in the world at Pulaski City. And what at one time constituted her currency and almost her only export—the celebrated Virginia Leaf Tobacco—continues without a peer in all the markets of the world.

War with Spain.—On the night of February 15th, 1898, the United States battleship, the “Maine,” while lying at anchor in the harbor of Havana in Cuba, was blown up, and two of her officers and two hundred and fifty-eight of her crew were killed in the explosion. At that time Cuba belonged to Spain, and had for some years been in a state of revolution. The cruelty of the Spanish soldiers to the Cubans had already caused a protest from the United States government, and our relations with Spain were strained. The destruction of the “Maine,” though never proved to have been caused by the Spanish government or its officials, so inflamed the public mind as to be the cause of war, which was formally declared by Spain, April 24th, 1898.

Fitzhugh Lee, of Virginia, who had been a distinguished Confederate general of cavalry, was the American consul-general at Havana at that time. When war was declared

he was appointed a major-general of volunteers in the United States army, and Virginia promptly furnished her quota of troops called for by the national government. They, however, participated in no battle, the little fighting that ensued being mostly done by the navy with brilliant success.

The chief result of the war was the liberation of Cuba and the acquisition by the United States of Porto Rico in the West Indies and of the Philippine Islands in the Orient. Perhaps the most gratifying effect of it was the actual restoration of mutual confidence and good feeling between the sections that had been arrayed against each other in the War of Secession. At the close of the war General Lee, of Virginia, and General Wheeler, of Alabama, both of whom had been general officers in the Confederate army, were placed on the retired list of the regular army, with the rank of brigadier-general. Many other Southerners who had enlisted received commissions in the army and navy of the United States.

Assassination of the President.—On the 6th of September, 1901, while receiving the ovations of the people at the great Pan-American Fair at Buffalo, New York, William McKinley, President of the United States, was shot by an anarchist, and after lingering for a few days died, universally lamented. He had but recently entered upon his second term, and his administration had been so patriotic and unsectional that it had begun to be known as the Second Era of Good Feeling, as that of the Virginian, James Monroe, is known as the first.

Constitutional Convention.—The State Constitution of 1867, ratified under threats in 1869, was from the first odious to the great body of the intelligent people of Virginia. Several of its worst features had been changed

by the method of amendment provided by its terms; but it remained a burden to the people who had had no share in framing it. In 1901 the question of a convention to reform and amend the constitution was submitted to the people by the General Assembly. The convention was called, and after deliberating for many months, framed a new constitution and proclaimed it as the organic law of the State. Every department of the government, legislative, executive, and judicial, promptly acknowledged the constitution by taking an oath to support it.

The changes made by it are many and important, the most important of all bearing on the suffrage—the right to vote in elections. After 1904 no one can become a voter without an educational qualification and the payment of a small head tax, and consequently the ignorant will no longer be able to vote. In all former constitutions, if there was any qualification required of voters, it was one not of intelligence but of property.

Other changes to be noted are the abolition of the time-honored county courts, the election of all the senators every fourth year instead of one-half of them every second year; the establishment of a Corporation Commission, whose chief function is to supervise all corporations other than municipal doing business in the State; and the election of certain executive officers by the vote of the people instead of by the General Assembly.

Recent Political Events.—The era since the adoption of the new Constitution has been marked by some political changes. The restrictive suffrage clauses of the Constitution have considerably reduced the number of voters and thus accentuated the control of the Democrats, who have been in power since 1886. In 1905 the primary system of nominations was introduced for senator, gov-

ernor, and other officers. Increasing prosperity and an improved system of tax assessment have so greatly enlarged the revenues of the State that in 1914 there was a considerable surplus in the treasury.

Virginia—Past and Present.—The story of Virginia is inspiring from the time when a little band of adventurers and money-seekers landed at Jamestown in 1607, to the present when she holds the proud position of the second State in the South in wealth and one of the foremost in education, in literary achievement, in agriculture, in mining, and in manufactures. After more than half a century's struggle with the Indians and with incompetent royal governors, she at last began to prosper, and at the outbreak of the Revolution was the wealthiest and most influential of the colonies. She naturally led, therefore, in the councils of the nation. Count the stars in the flag of our country and note how many Virginia contributed to the Union, if you will gain some idea how generously she parted with her territory to strengthen the central government. When she considered her past relations to the Union she loved and had done so much to form, it is not strange that strong men wept when in the Secession Convention they felt constrained by love of freedom and a high sense of duty to break ties strengthened by so many sacred associations. This, too, when they knew that the soil of their native State would be reddened with the blood of her sons. Counting all kinds of combats, there were over fourteen hundred in Virginia during the Civil War. Of generals of every rank in the Confederacy, Virginia contributed seventy-seven, and to her armies over one hundred and fifty thousand men.

Prostrated by the terrible struggle, with her social and industrial system overthrown by the abolition of slavery,

she experienced for three years the tyranny of military rule and finally reëntered the family of States in 1870. Since that time she has steadily advanced, though very slowly for the first fifteen years, until at the present time she occupies the proud position to which we have already referred.

Wonderfully blessed as Virginia is by nature, with her temperate climate, fertile soil, varied products, and freedom from earthquakes, cyclones, and floods, it is her noble men and women who have made her great, and the children of to-day, who read and study the story of her past, will be the men and women of to-morrow who will make her future.

QUESTIONS.

1. How did Virginia incur her debt before the war?
2. When was the debt settled?
3. What part was assigned to West Virginia by the Supreme Court?
4. Explain the Readjuster Movement.
5. What disaster occurred at the University of Virginia?
6. What change has lately been made in the government of the University, and what has been the result of this change?
7. Give an account of the Boom Period.
8. Mention some of the noteworthy higher institutions of learning in Virginia.
9. Who originated our present Public School System?
10. Name the leading Normal Schools in the State.
11. What is the present attitude towards education in Virginia?
12. Name some of Virginia's leading men of letters.
13. Name some important monuments.
14. Date and character of the Jamestown Exposition.
15. Give an account of Virginia's resources.
16. What were some of the chief changes made by the new Constitution?
17. What lesson does Virginia's past teach us?

REVIEW QUESTIONS ON PERIODS IV AND V: VIRGINIA
DURING THE WAR, 1861-1865, AND VIRGINIA
SINCE THE WAR, 1865-1914.

1. Why is it necessary to go back to the foundation of the government in order to understand the causes of the war?
2. What was the general view at first as to the right of secession?
3. Why did this view change in the North?
4. What was the Southern view in regard to the relation between the State and the Union?
5. What did the South believe in regard to slavery?
6. What was the effect of the Presidential Election in 1860?
7. What efforts did Virginia make to bring about a peaceful solution of the troubles?
8. What was her attitude at first towards secession?
9. When and why did she secede?
10. What was Maryland's attitude?
11. Compare the resources of the North and South in 1861.
 - a. In population.
 - b. In property.
 - c. In manufactures.
 - d. In navy.
 - e. In condition of government.
12. Where was the Union sentiment in the South strongest?
13. What advantages had the South over the North?
14. What preparations did Virginia make for the struggle?
15. What were the Federal plans and how were they to be met?
16. Give an account of the chief battle in Virginia in 1861.
17. What were the chief events elsewhere?
18. What were the main centres of interest in the 1862 campaigns in Virginia?
19. Give an account of Jackson's Valley Campaign.
20. Tell the story of the "Monitor" and the "Merrimac."
21. What was the success of the Confederates in the Peninsula Campaign?
22. Give an account of the second battle of Manassas.
23. What were General Lee's plans after this?
24. Give an account of the Maryland Campaign.
25. Who succeeded General McClellan?
26. Describe the great battle of Fredericksburg.
27. What were the chief events outside of Virginia in 1862?
28. Give an account of the most important battle fought in 1863 in Virginia.
29. What noteworthy battle was fought in Pennsylvania?
30. What was the effect of the Confederate defeat here?
31. Most important events of the war outside of Virginia.
32. Condition of the Confederacy at the close of 1863.
33. What had been the Federal plans in regard to their generals, and what change was made in 1864?
34. Who was appointed commander in chief of their forces?

35. What was his plan of campaign in Virginia?
36. What were the chief minor operations of this year in Virginia?
37. Give an account of the struggle between Grant and Lee in this year.
38. What were the chief events of the year outside of Virginia?
39. What was the condition of the Confederacy at the close of 1863?
40. Give an account of the surrender at Appomattox.
41. What were the closing events of the war outside of Virginia?
42. Give an account of the formation of West Virginia.
43. What two great questions did the war solve?
44. What was the condition of Virginia after the war?
45. What was the effect of the assassination of President Lincoln?
46. What was Lincoln's and Johnson's plan of reconstruction?
47. What change in this plan was made by Congress?
48. Give an account of the closing days of General Lee.
49. Name some of the governors of Virginia since 1870.
50. Give an account of the settlement of the debt of Virginia.
51. What was the origin of the Readjuster party?
52. Who was the originator of the modern public-school system in Virginia?
53. Name some of the chief higher institutions for men and women in Virginia.
54. What are some of the chief sources of wealth in the State?
55. Name some important events since 1890.
56. What were the chief acts of the last Constitutional Convention?

[THE END.]

INDEX.

- Abercrombie, Col., 2, 14.
- Accomac, 83, 86-7.
- Alderman, E. A., 306-7.
- Alien Law, 226.
- Amadas, 2.
- Amelia Court-House, 290.
- Amendments to Constitution, 293.
- Anne, Queen, 242.
- Antietam (see Sharpsburg).
- Appalachian Mountains, 107, 255-6.
- Appomattox, 25, 290.
- Argall, 55-56.
- Arlington, 300.
- Arnold, Benedict, 198-203.
- Ashby, 268.
- Assembly, Virginia, 145.
- Averill, Gen., 285.
- Authors, Virginia, 308-9.

- Bacon, Nathaniel, 78-96.
- Baltimore, Lord, 73-4.
- Banks, Gen., 267.
- Barlow, 2, 5.
- Bartow, Gen., 262-3.
- Bee, Gen., 262.
- Beauregard, Gen., 242, 288.
- Berkeley, Norborne (see Bote-tourt).
- Berkeley, Sir William, 68, 70, 72, 77-100.
- Bermuda Hundred, 286.
- Beverley, 91.
- Bibliography, just after Index.
- Bill of Rights, 182-4.
- Bjarne, 1.
- Blackbeard, 110.
- Blair, President, 106.
- Bland, Giles, 86, 87, 98.
- Bland, Richard, 146, 215.
- "Bloody Angle," 287.
- Blount, 233.
- Boom Period, 304-5.
- Boston, 145, 149, 151.
- Botetourt County, 153.
- Botetourt, Gov., 150, 151, 153.

- Braddock, 132-7.
- Breckinridge, Gen., 283-5.
- Brent, 179.
- Brown, John, of Rhode Island, 244.
- Brown's, John, Raid, 246-8.
- Bull Run (see Manassas).
- Burden's Grant, 114.
- Burgesses, 101, 126, 137, 147, 151, 154, 164.
- Burnside, Gen., 275-6, 288.
- Burras, Anne, 41.
- Butler, Gen., 286, 288.
- Byrd, Col., 112-13.

- Cabots, 2.
- Cadets, V. M. I. (see New Market).
- Callender, Jas. T., 231-2.
- Camden, 193.
- Capitol disaster, 298-9.
- Carpet-bagger, 298.
- Carver, Wm., 86.
- Cary, Archibald, 181, 190.
- Cassen, Geo., 21.
- Cedar Creek, 286.
- Chahoon, 298.
- Chancellorsville, 278.
- Charles I, 68, 71, 73, 142.
- Charles II, 75, 98-9, 142.
- Charlottesville, 195, 239, 305-7.
- Chase, Judge, 231-2.
- Chesapeake Bay, 33-5.
- Chicheley, Sir Henry, 78, 100.
- Church disputes, 73-4.
- Civil War in England, 71-5.
- Civil War in United States, Chapters 31-6.
- Civil War in Virginia (see Bacon's Rebellion).
- Clarke, Geo. R., 200, 215.
- Clinton, Sir Henry, 209, 211.
- Cockburn, Admiral, 237.
- Cold Harbor, 287.
- Colleges of Virginia, 305-7.
- Collins, Admiral, 192.
- Colonies, 112, 154, 186.

- Colonists, murder of, 51.
 Columbus, 2.
 Conjurors, Indian, 24.
 Connelly, 170, 171.
 Conscience, Liberty of, 187-8.
 Constitution, 182, 221, 241, 314-15.
 Conventions, 158, 181, 221, 223-4, 314-15.
 Cornstalk, 156, 170.
 Cornwallis, Lord, 193, 203, 205, 209, 210, 211-14.
 Crater, at Petersburg, 288.
 Cresap, Col., 155.
 Croatan, 7.
 Cromwell, 72-4.
 Crook, Gen., 285.
 Cross Keys, 267.
 Crutchfield, Col., 237.
 Culpeper, Lord, 100-3, 121.
 Customs, Quaint Valley, 115-18.

 Dale, Sir Thos., 55.
 Daniel, J. W., 301.
 Dare, Virginia, 7.
 Davis, Jefferson, 272, 279.
 Debt, State, 303-4.
 Declaration of Independence, 183-4.
 Declaration of Rights, 181-3.
 De Kalb, 191, 201.
 Delaware, Lord, 53-5.
 Democrat, 246.
 Dennis, Capt., 72.
 Dictatorship in Virginia, 190.
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 124-6, 131.
 Disasters (see Theatre and Capitol).
 Discoveries, Early, Chapter 1.
 Dissenters, 187.
 Drummond, 84, 97-8.
 Dunmore, Governor, 153-180.
 Duquesne, Fort, 129, 132-3, 138-9.
 Dutchmen, 45-6.

 Early, Gen., 263, 284-5.
 Education (see Schools, Colleges, University).
 Elizabeth, Queen, 2, 3, 8, 65.

 Ellyson, 298.
 Emancipation, 293.
 England, 242.
 English History, 64-8.
 Episcopal Church, 73, 187-8.
 Eric the Red, 1.
 Evans, Col., 262.
 Explorers, Early, Chapter 1.
 Ewell, Gen., 272.
 Ezekiel, Sir Moses, 284.

 Fairfax, Lord, 114, 121.
 Fair Oaks, 270.
 Famine in Colony, 51-2.
 Fauquier, Gov., 139, 150.
 Federalists, 225.
 Federals, 260, 282-3 (see Civil War).
 Field, Col., 156.
 Fisher's Hill, 286.
 Five Nations, 104-5.
 Flemming, Col., 156.
 Forest, Mrs., 41.
 Fordyce, Capt., 172.
 Fowey, 163, 166.
 Foy, Capt., 154.
 France and America, 191.
 Fredericksburg, 275-8.
 Fremont, Gen., 267-8.
 French and English Contests, 122-40.
 Frobisher, 2.
 Fund, Common in Colony, 60.

 Gabriel, 232-3.
 Gage, Gen., 170.
 Gates, Gen., 193.
 Gates, Sir Thomas, 52, 53, 55.
 Gettysburg, 279-80.
 Gilbert, Humphrey, 2.
 Gold Fever, 30.
 Gooch, Governor, 114.
 Gordon, Gen., 285.
 Gosnold, 10.
 Government, forming of, 219-24.
 Governors, recent, 301-2.
 Granganameo, 4, 5.
 Grant, Gen., 242, 282-3, 285, 286-92.

- Grasse, Comdt de, 211.
 Greenland, 1.
 Grenville, Sir Richard, 6, 34.
 Gwynn's Island, 177-9.
- Halket, Maj., 139-40.
 Hampton, 166-8, 268-70.
 Hansford, Thos., 96.
 Harper's Ferry, 247-8, 258, 274.
 Harvey, Sir John, 68.
 Hatteras, Cape, 3.
 Henriopolis, 55.
 Henry VII, 2, 65.
 Henry VIII, 65.
 Henry, Patrick, 142-50, 185-6,
 190, 214, 224, 226-8.
 Hite, Joist, 113.
 Hobby, 120.
 Holmes, Gen., 263.
 Hooker, Gen., 276.
 Horseshoe, Knights of, 109.
 Howard, Governor, 105.
 Hunt, Parson, 10, 30.
 Hunter, Gen., 284.
 Hutchings, Col., 169.
- Independence, Declaration of,
 181-3, 184-5.
 Indians, 4-7, 13, 17, 18, 20, 31,
 39, 62, 63-4, 77-80, 85, 123-4,
 139, 155-8, 170.
 Industries, 311-12.
 Ingram, 96.
 Irish Discovery of America, 1.
- Jack of the Feather, 62.
 Jackson, General, 242, 258-9,
 260-5, 267-8, 272-3, 278-9, 301.
 James I, 65-6.
 Jamestown, 11, 16, 23, 24, 29, 30,
 32, 35, 37.
 Jamestown Exposition, 311.
 Japazaws, 55-6.
 Jefferson, Thomas, 149, 165, 188,
 192, 205, 207-8, 214, 239, 240,
 243, 307.
 Jeffries, Governor, 100.
 Jones, Gen., 284.
 Johnston, President, 297.
 Johnston, Gen., 254, 270.
- Kanawha, 294.
 Kendall, 20.
 Kentucky, 225.
 Kernstown, 267-85.
 Knights of Horseshoe, 109.
- Labrador, 2.
 La Fayette, 191, 201-4, 209, 210.
 Land Regulations, 60.
 Lane, Ralph, 6.
 Laramore, 86, 87.
 La Salle, 123.
 Laws, Alien and Sedition, 226.
 Laydon, John, 41.
 Lee, Charles, 177-8.
 Lee, Fitzhugh, 312-13.
 Lee, Light Horse Harry, 215.
 Lee, Richard Henry, 146, 215.
 Lee, Robert E., 242, 243, 247-8,
 250, 259-60, 270-82, 286-92,
 298-301.
 Leif, 1.
 Lewis, Gen. Andrew, 155-7, 178-9.
 Lewis, John, 114.
 Lexington, Massachusetts, 160-1.
 Lexington, Virginia, 284, 301.
 Liberty of Conscience, 187-8.
 Liberty, Sons of, 149.
 Lincoln, President, 296-7.
 Literary Progress, 308-9.
 Logan, 155, 157-8.
 London Co., 10, 13, 33, 49, 65-6.
 Longstreet, Gen., 272-8.
 Louisiana, 123.
 Ludwell, Philip, 87, 91.
- McLean, Wilmer, 290.
 McClellan, Gen., 242, 268, 270-4.
 McLeod, 207.
 McDowell, Battle of, 267.
 McKinley, President, assassin-
 ated, 313.
 Mackey, John, 114.
 Madison, 147, 224, 240, 241, 243.
 Madoc, 1.
 Mahone, Gen., 304.
 Magruder, Gen., 270.
 Malvern Hill, 271.
 Manassas, First, 260-5.
 Manassas, Second, 272-3.

- Manufactures, 311-12.
 Marriage, First in Virginia, 41.
 Marshall, John, 224, 241, 243.
 Marshall, Major, 171.
 Maryland, 73-4, 254-5, 273.
 Mason, George, 147, 182, 214, 215, 243.
 Massacre, Indian, 62.
 Matthews, Capt., 192.
 Maynard, Lieut., 110.
 Mercer, Gen., 215.
 Merrimac, 268-70.
 Mexican War, 241-2.
 Milroy, 267.
 Monitor, 268-70.
 Mounachins, 36, 37, 39, 41.
 Monocacy, 284.
 Monroe, James, 240, 241, 243.
 Monticello, 195, 208.
 Monumental Church, 236.
 Monuments, 309-11.
 Morgan, 62.
 Morgan, Gen., 215.
 Mother of Presidents, 238.
 Mother of States, 8.
 Mount Vernon, 140, 220, 224, 229.
 Munford, Col., 268.

 Navigation Laws, 75, 84, 142.
 Navy, Northern and Southern, 256.
 Necessity, Fort, 129.
 Nelson, Thos., 163, 197, 211.
 New England, 243-4.
 Newport, Captain, 10, 11, 12-14, 27, 28, 31, 36, 38-41, 45.
 New Market, 283.
 Norfolk, 168, 171, 174-6, 192, 305.
 Normal Schools, 308.
 Norse Discoveries of America, 1.
 North, Resources in 1860, 255-7.
 North Carolina, 3, 8.
 Northern Testimony as to Civil War, 291.
 Northwest Territory, 221.

 O'Hara, Gen., 213.
 Okec, 16, 24.

 Old Dominion, 75.
 Opechankanough, 22, 29, 46-8, 61, 69, 70.

 Pamaunkee, 46.
 Parliament, 71.
 Parties, Political, 225.
 Pendleton, Edmund, 146, 188, 215, 224.
 Peninsula Campaign, 270.
 Periods of Virginia History (see Review Questions).
 Petersburg, 113, 288.
 Phillips, General, 200.
 Pickett, 279-80, 288-90.
 Pierpont, Governor, 294-98.
 Pitt, William, 150.
 Plymouth Company, 10.
 Pocahontas, 26, 32, 43, 54, 55, 56-9.
 Point-of-Fork, 205.
 Point Pleasant, 155.
 Policy, Military, of Federals, 282-3.
 Pope, Gen., 272-3.
 Population, North and South, 1860, 255.
 Port Republic, 267-284.
 Powhatan, 11, 12, 24-28, 37-38, 44-6, 55-8, 60-61.
 Presidents from Virginia, 238-9.
 Presbyterians, 74.
 Primogeniture, 188.
 Property, Private Ownership of, 60.
 Prosperity of Virginia, 109, 140, 311-12, 315-16.
 Public-School System, 307-8.

 Questions on Chapters, end each chapter.
 Questions, Review on Periods (see Review).

 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 2, 7, 67.
 Ramseur, Gen., 285.
 Randolph, John, 229, 241.
 Randolph, Peyton, 146.
 Ratcliffe, 36.
 Readjuster Party, 302.

- Rebellion, Bacon's (see Bacon).
 Reconstruction, 297-8.
 Religion of Indians, 5, 19.
 Republican Party, 225.
 Resolutions of 1798, 227.
 Resources, North and South, 1860, 255-7.
 Review Questions, 76-7, 152-3, 216, 249, 317-318.
 Revolution, American, 158, 192, 197.
 Rhodes, Gen., 285.
 Richmond, 113, 158, 197, 198, 199, 203, 234, 290.
 Roanoke Island, 5.
 Robertson, Speaker, 126-7.
 Rochambeau, Count, 213.
 Ruffner, William Henry, 307-8.
 Rumsey, Jas., 217-19.
 Ryan, Father, 301.

 Saint John's Church, 158.
 Saint Pierre, 125.
 Saratoga Prisoners, 193-6.
 Scandinavian Discoveries in America, 1.
 Scalawag, 298.
 Schofield, Gen., 298.
 Schools, High, 308.
 Schools, Normal, 308.
 Schools, Public, 307-8.
 Scotch-Irish Settlers in Valley, 113, 115.
 Seal of Virginia, 186-7.
 Secession, 251-5, 292.
 Sedition Law, 226, 231-2.
 Seven Pines, 270.
 Sharpsburg, 274.
 Shawneetown, 156.
 Sheridan, Gen., 285.
 Sherman, Gen., 242.
 Shipp, Col., 283.
 Shipyards, 312.
 Sickness in Colony, 51-2.
 Sigel, General, 283.
 Simcoe, Col., 199, 205.
 Slavery, 61, 232-4, 242-8, 252-3, 292-3.
 Smith, John, 8-11, 12-16, 20-26, 28-32, 34-7, 38-44, 45-50, 51-2, 55, 61, 63-4, 122.
 Smith, Gen. Kirby, 263.
 Somers, Sir Geo., 52, 53.
 South Mountain, 274.
 South, Resources in 1860, 255-7.
 Spottswood, Governor, 106-11, 123.
 Spottsylvania, 287.
 Stamp Act, 143-150.
 Steam Engine (see Rumsey).
 Steuben, 199-200, 205.
 Stevens, Col., 172.
 Stonewall, 262, 265.
 Summaries in Civil War, end of chapters 32-5 and page 292.

 Tarleton, 203, 205-6.
 Taxation without Representation, 141.
 Taylor, Gen., 241.
 Teach, John, 110.
 Tea-party, Boston, 151.
 Territory, Northwest, 221.
 Texas, 241-2.
 Theatre, burning of, 234-6.
 Tobacco, 66-8, 101-3.
 Tories, 169, 176.
 Traditions, 1.
 Travis, 233.
 Tribes, Indian, 17.
 Tucker, Judge, 182.
 Turner, Nat., 233-4.

 Union Soldiers in South, 256.
 University of Virginia, 239, 305-7.

 Valley Campaigns, 267-8, 283-6.
 Valley of Virginia, 113-118.
 Villiers, 130.
 Virginia (ironclad), 268-270.
 Virginia (State), 8, 142, 176, 181, 186, 214, 225, 238, 242-9, 254, 296, 315-16.
 Virginia Authors, 308-9.
 Virginia Military Institute, 258, 283, 284, 307.

- Walker, Governor, 298.
 Walklate, 96.
 Wallace, Gen., 284.
 Waller, Mr., 233.
 War, Civil, Chapters 31-36 and 292-3.
 War of 1812, 236-7.
 War, French and English (see French).
 War, Indian (see Indians).
 War, Mexican, 241.
 War of Revolution (see Revolution).
 War, Spanish, 312-13.
 Washington, George, 119-140, 177, 189, 210-14, 221, 224, 229.
 Washington, Wm., 215.
 Washington and Lee, 301, 307.
 Wayne, Gen., 204.
 Wealth, North and South, 1860, 255.
 Welsh Discovery of America, 1.
 Werowocomoco, 24, 41, 45.
 West Virginia, 266, 293-5, 303-4.
 Wheeler, Gen., 313.
 Whig, 246.
 White, Joseph, 7.
 "White-Eyes," 170.
 Wilderness, Battles in, 287.
 Wilford, Capt., 96.
 William and Mary College, 105-6.
 William and Mary (Sovereigns), 105.
 Williams, 120.
 Williamsburg, 84, 106, 124, 153, 155, 162, 177, 181, 184, 270.
 Winchester, 267, 285, 286.
 Wingfield, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 26.
 Winne, Capt., 45.
 Wives Imported for Colonists, 61-62.
 Woodford, Col., 167.
 Wythe, 215, 224, 243.
 Yeardley, Governor, 66, 68.
 Yorktown, 211-214, 270.

BRIEF LIST OF REFERENCE BOOKS ON VIRGINIA AND THE UNITED STATES HISTORY.

FOR THE TEACHER.

1. Bassett's History of the United States. About the most complete one-volume history. Considered one of the fairest on disputed questions.
2. The Study of History in the Elementary Schools, 50 cents, Scribner's Sons. Good bibliography, valuable hints on teaching history. Covers all of American History.
3. Fiske's Old Virginia and Her Neighbors (2 volumes). \$4.00. Sympathetic, accurate, interesting.
4. John Esten Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion. For local color.

FOR THE SCHOOL LIBRARY.

1. In the American Statesmen series the lives of Washington, Jefferson, Madison, and the other distinguished Virginia statesmen. Of varying merit, but exceedingly helpful.
2. The Old Dominion, Thomas Nelson Page, \$1.50. An interesting volume.
3. Bruce's Social History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century, \$1.50.
4. Bruce's Economic History of Virginia (same period), \$5.00.
5. Bruce's Institutional History of Virginia (same period), \$6.00. III, IV, and V are the standard books on the period themes.
6. The Old South Leaflets and The American History Leaflets are cheap pamphlets (a few cents each) giving the original sources.
7. Long's Life of General R. E. Lee.
8. Henderson's Life of General Jackson, \$4.00. VII and VIII cover admirably the Civil War period.
9. B. B. Munford's Virginia's Attitude Towards Slavery and Secession, \$2.00.
10. B. S. Wise's Life of H. A. Wise, \$3.00.
11. C. H. Ambler's Sectionalism in Virginia, \$1.50. IX, X, and XI cover fairly well the period between the Revolution and 1861.
12. Magruder's Recent Administration in Virginia (Johns Hopkins University studies), \$1.50.
13. The South in the Building of the Nation (12 volumes). A valuable reference book.
14. The American Nation Series (23 volumes). The Standard elaborate American History.

If school-teachers or superintendents will write to the Traveling Library Division, State Librarian, Richmond, Va., they can borrow under specified conditions any of the foregoing books.

In the preparation of the above list the editor is largely indebted to Professor C. C. Pearson, acting Professor of History (1913-1914), at Washington and Lee University.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 366 409 0

